

# no- glamour<sup>®</sup> grammar 2

Diane M. Hyde

Skill Area: language arts  
Grade Level: 3rd thru 8th grade  
Ages: 8 - 14



LinguSystems, Inc.  
3100 4th Avenue  
East Moline, IL 61244-9700

**1-800-PRO IDEA**  
1-800-776-4332

Copyright © 1995 LinguSystems, Inc

All of our products are copyrighted to protect the fine work of our authors. You may, however, copy the worksheets for your students as often as needed.

Reproduction and distribution of these worksheets for an entire school, school system, or group of professionals is not allowed.

Printed in the U.S.A.  
ISBN 1-55999-529-7

## About the Author

---



Diane M. Hyde

**Diane M. Hyde**, M.S., Ed. Specialist, is a resource teacher at Goose Creek CISD in Baytown, Texas. Throughout the years, she has served as a speech-language pathologist, a regular and special educator, a coordinator of education for exceptional children, a regional state consultant, and a teacher of undergraduate and graduate studies at both Livingston University and Mississippi State University. She has also done numerous workshops concerning special education on the local, district, and state levels. Diane has received several awards for her work with exceptional children and their families, including the Sertoma Service to Mankind Award, the Outstanding Educator Award, and the Outstanding Citizen Award. Diane has also written *No-Glamour Vocabulary*.

## Dedication

---

To all of my fellow educators and the students I have served

## Acknowledgments

---

A very special thanks goes to the LinguSystems' staff for their unending support and encouragement, and for giving me the opportunity to share with others.

And, last but not least, a huge thank you to my supportive and loving husband, Jess.

## Table of Contents

---

Introduction .....	5
Nouns .....	7
Pronouns .....	22
Verbs .....	43
present tense .....	63
past tense .....	69
future tense .....	72
irregular verbs .....	76
helping verbs .....	87
subject-verb agreement .....	102
Phrases and Sentences	
sentence completion .....	108
word order .....	124
Plurals .....	132
Adjectives .....	147
Possessives .....	177
Adverbs .....	192
Negatives/Contractions .....	208
Prepositions .....	225
Questions .....	236
Prefixes/Suffixes .....	250
Pre/Posttests .....	275
Answer Key .....	303





## Introduction

---

*No-Glamour Grammar 2* was developed with one idea in mind — to provide additional materials for students learning grammar concepts and skills. The variety of activity sheets reinforces target skills and gives students practice applying their knowledge. These sheets also allow students to improve their language skills in the context of interesting and varied activities as they simultaneously develop grammar competency. Students will be able to make a connection between your instructional lessons and these practice sheets.

Most of the activity sheets focus on one target skill, allowing for in-depth practice. Other sheets combine skills for practice and reinforcement.

*No-Glamour Grammar 2* covers:

- nouns
- pronouns
- verbs (regular, irregular, helping)
- phrases and sentences (sentence completion, word order)
- plurals
- adjectives
- possessives
- adverbs
- negatives/contractions
- prepositions
- questioning
- prefixes/suffixes

There is also a pre- and posttest for each unit.

The activity sheets in *No-Glamour Grammar 2* can be used in any teaching environment, including traditional classrooms, rooms with task grouping, learning centers, and individual programming.

Diane



# *Name That Noun!*

A *common noun* names a person, place, or thing. Common nouns are not capitalized. Some examples are listed below.

**People**

mother  
fire fighter  
friends

**Places**

city  
park  
school

**Things**

plate  
ball  
chair

A *proper noun* names a particular person, place, or thing. A proper noun is always capitalized. Look at the examples listed below.

**People**

Aunt Lynn  
Jeri  
Mayor Johannes

**Places**

Miami  
Sunshine Park  
Florida

**Things**

Frisbee®  
Thermos®  
Jell-o®

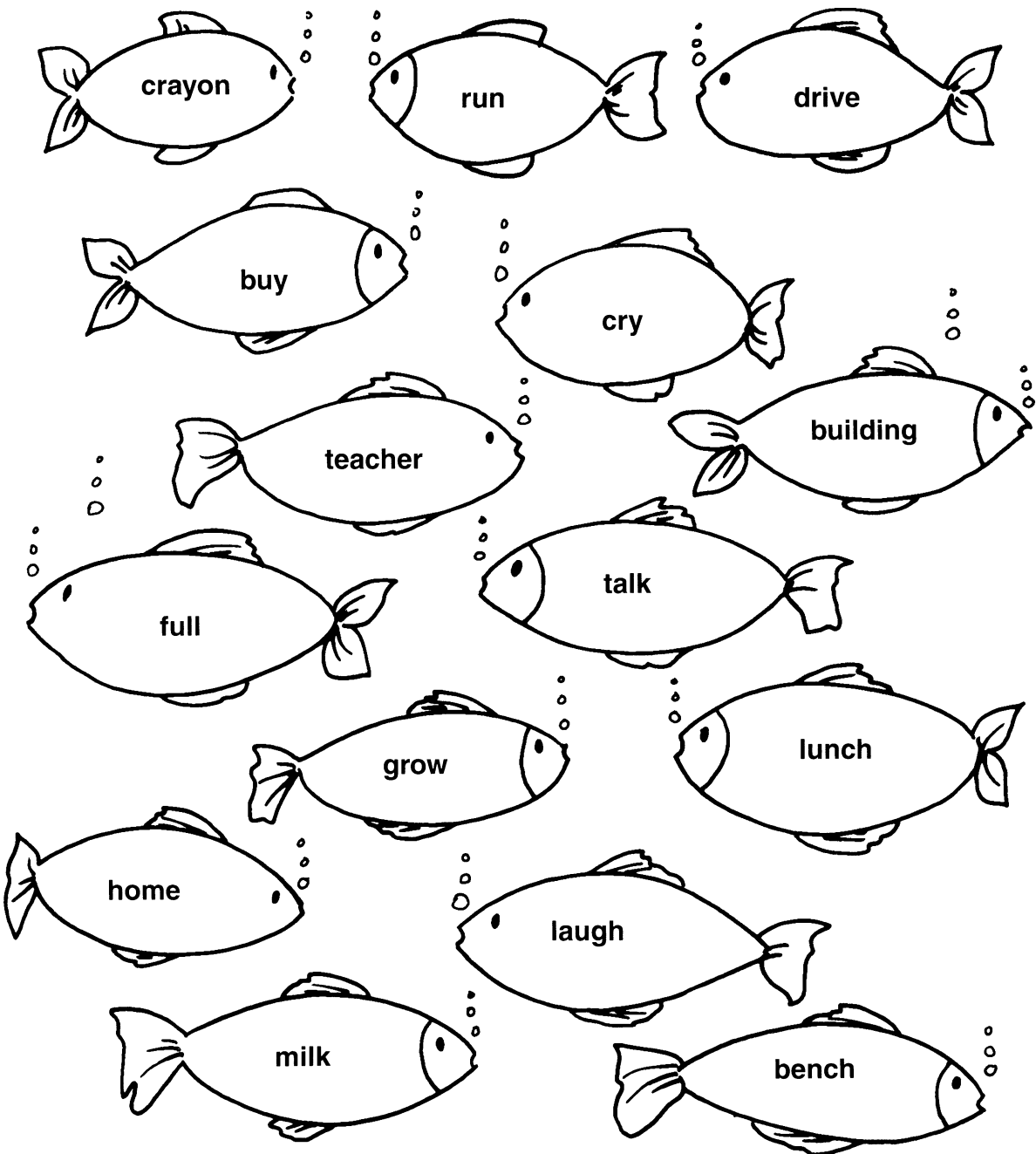
Find the nouns in these sentences. Circle each proper noun and underline each common noun.

1. Karin loves to talk on the phone.
2. The symphony is performing Sunday at The Mark.
3. Why didn't Ryan buy the dog?
4. Nakisha tried on the blue and green sarong.
5. Seth helped his grandma sell her baskets.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Fishing Anyone?

Do you like to fish? Let's go fishing for nouns! Nouns name people, places, and things. Read each word in a fish. If you catch a word fish that's a noun, color it green. If the word fish isn't a noun, color it any color.



# CALLING ALL NOUNS

Calling all nouns! Identification, please. Fill in the blanks by writing whether the noun names a person, place, or thing. The first one is done for you.

- |             |              |               |       |
|-------------|--------------|---------------|-------|
| 1. grapes   | <u>thing</u> | 16. farmer    | _____ |
| 2. store    | _____        | 17. book      | _____ |
| 3. boat     | _____        | 18. bathroom  | _____ |
| 4. girl     | _____        | 19. cup       | _____ |
| 5. lunch    | _____        | 20. cap       | _____ |
| 6. dress    | _____        | 21. school    | _____ |
| 7. kitchen  | _____        | 22. coat      | _____ |
| 8. dentist  | _____        | 23. snake     | _____ |
| 9. library  | _____        | 24. lake      | _____ |
| 10. home    | _____        | 25. hand      | _____ |
| 11. clerk   | _____        | 26. party     | _____ |
| 12. toaster | _____        | 27. elephant  | _____ |
| 13. beach   | _____        | 28. basket    | _____ |
| 14. writer  | _____        | 29. manager   | _____ |
| 15. paint   | _____        | 30. coat rack | _____ |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Name It!

Read each word in the box. Think about what the noun names. Then, write the noun in the correct category.

People	Places	Things

town

cup

clerk

king

garden

clown

chair

farmer

banana

nurse

school

airport

statue

desert

purse

crab

studio

cloud

kite

driver

pilot

doctor

grocery

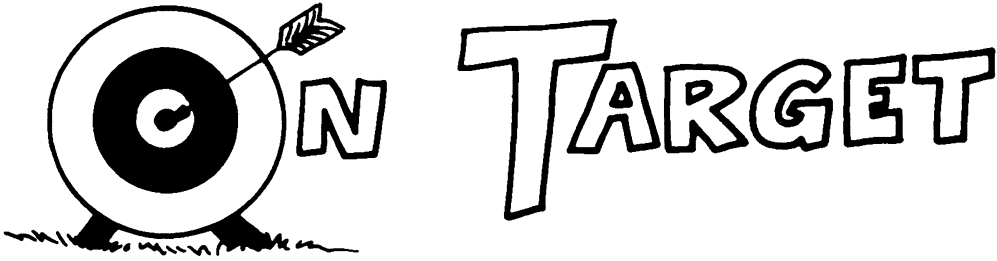
park

# The Hunt Is On

A noun names a person, place, or thing. Hunt for the nouns in each sentence and underline each one you find. Then, write **P** for person, **PL** for place, and **T** for thing over the noun. Happy hunting!

1. My sister is eating an apple at the round table.
2. The boys played baseball at the park.
3. Marita and Steffi went to a party at school.
4. The ruler is on the table near the globe.
5. Nadia went to the store to get milk and eggs for breakfast.
6. The ball rolled under the car parked on the street.
7. The funny man wore a flower in his jacket.
8. Ian saw lions, elephants, and tigers at the circus last Saturday.
9. You left your book on the desk in the library.
10. My teacher reads stories to us every day after lunch.

Name \_\_\_\_\_



You'll really be on target when you know your nouns! Read each sentence. Then, write the two nouns from each sentence on the lines.

- |   |       |       |
|---|-------|-------|
| 1. Pioneers traveled in covered wagons.   | _____ | _____ |
| 2. Wild animals roamed the land.          | _____ | _____ |
| 3. We read some articles about birds.     | _____ | _____ |
| 4. The astronaut spoke to our class.      | _____ | _____ |
| 5. The students wrote about submarines.   | _____ | _____ |
| 6. The kitten slept under the table.      | _____ | _____ |
| 7. Our group went to the library.         | _____ | _____ |
| 8. The hamsters scurried around the cage. | _____ | _____ |
| 9. The repairperson fixed our telephone.  | _____ | _____ |
| 10. The snake slithered into the water.   | _____ | _____ |
| 11. The doctor checked her chart.         | _____ | _____ |
| 12. My favorite vegetable is squash.      | _____ | _____ |
| 13. This map shows every country.         | _____ | _____ |
| 14. The museum displayed a moon rock.     | _____ | _____ |

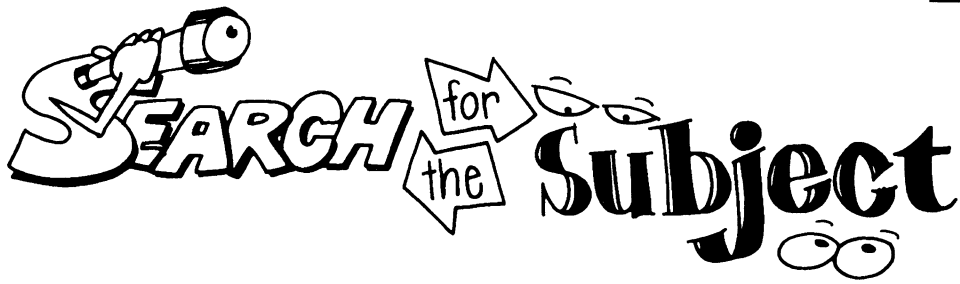




It's time to zero in on subjects! The *subject* of a sentence tells what the sentence is about. The subject is a noun that tells *who* or *what* is doing something.

Read each sentence below. Underline the subject.

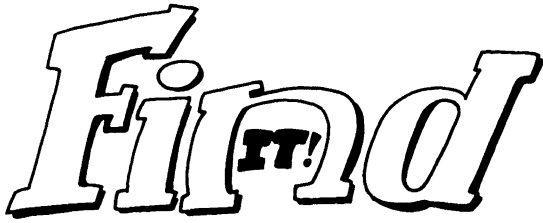
1. The large grandfather clock chimed loudly.
2. My grandmother likes to make quilts.
3. The boat rocked up and down with the large waves.
4. The audience clapped for the actors in the play.
5. The rider led her horse up the steep mountain.
6. Our club is going to see a ball game on Saturday.
7. The buffalo ran quickly across the plains.
8. Coach Perez called a practice for Thursday afternoon.
9. The children petted the animals in the petting zoo.
10. The volcano began to spew out ashes.
11. The barber cut my hair too short!
12. The students wrote their names at the tops of their papers.



Search for the *subject* in each sentence. Underline it. Remember, the subject of a sentence is the noun that tells us *who* or *what* the sentence is about.

1. The cat played with the ball.
2. The toddler cried when she fell.
3. Dogs bark at cars going by.
4. The plants grew on the water's edge.
5. The boy ran down the street.
6. Many floats were in the parade.
7. My sister laughed at the silly clown.
8. My aunt works in a factory.
9. James slept through the storm.
10. The radio was turned up too loudly.
11. The kitten was asleep by the fire.
12. The man drove the car to the garage.
13. The choir sang beautifully.
14. My baseball glove is at my apartment.
15. That apple tasted so good!
16. The test was given on Monday.
17. The tiny bug crawled across the floor.
18. My teacher was absent today.
19. The bluebird flew into the nest.
20. The building was torn down today.
21. My pen ran out of ink.
22. The clock needs to be repaired.
23. Your food is on the table.
24. That color is a light shade of green.

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Every sentence should have a subject and a verb. Read each sentence. To find the subject, ask yourself, "Who or what is doing something?" To find the verb, ask yourself, "What is happening?" or "What is the subject doing?" Then, write the subject and verb from each sentence in the chart.

1. Rico floated down the river in the canoe.
2. A tiny rabbit hopped across the grass.
3. Janice sat down at her computer.
4. Jason looked everywhere for his car keys.
5. The musician played a wonderful song.
6. The mail carrier delivered the package to our house.

Subject	Verb
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	

Name \_\_\_\_\_



It's a noun exchange! An exact noun is more specific than a general noun. Find an exact noun in the word box to replace each underlined word. The first one is done for you.

1. We picked vegetables from the garden. peas
2. The room was full of people. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The man watched the mall at night. \_\_\_\_\_
4. That flower is beautiful. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The squirrel picked up the nuts from the ground. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Carlos caught a huge fish. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Our class studied the weather. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I bought a new pair of hiking shoes. \_\_\_\_\_
9. This story is about a large mammal. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The event will be held in the auditorium. \_\_\_\_\_
11. The sales clerk showed us the jewelry to be auctioned. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Huge creatures roamed the earth many years ago. \_\_\_\_\_

security guard	hurricane
✓peas	kingfish
boots	rose
concert	rings
dinosaurs	auditorium
pecans	whale

# Be Specific

This is a noun exchange, where you'll exchange one noun for a more specific noun. Read each sentence and look at the underlined word. Find a specific word from the word box to replace the underlined word. Write it above the word.

roast  
rocker  
orange  
park

collie  
couch  
raincoat  
library

girl  
roses  
baby-sitter  
artist

1. The flowers were in a beautiful arrangement.
2. She put on her coat because it was raining.
3. The mother held the baby while she sat in the chair.
4. The fruit you picked from the tree was delicious.
5. The man sketched a drawing of the children as they played.
6. They replaced the furniture that was damaged in the flood.
7. The child spilled juice on her dress.
8. The dog howled during the night.
9. Joanna baked a special meat for her visitors on Sunday.
10. We went to the building to check out books.
11. The woman watched the children during the week while their father worked.
12. We went to the picnic at the property on Thames Road.

# What's Your Line?

Let's do a specific noun exchange with people who work, like a teacher. Read each sentence. Then, find a specific noun in the word box to replace the underlined word. Write it above the underlined word.

1. The worker hammered the nail into the wood.
2. Rick was voted the best football person for the year.
3. The flowers were arranged by the man.
4. The woman washed and cut my hair at the salon in the mall.
5. We hired a person to answer phones and type letters.
6. The man at the bank cashed our check.
7. The person at the radio station played my favorite song.
8. That fellow won at the rodeo on Saturday.
9. The man stood behind me when he cut my hair.
10. That player was very good in the movie.
11. When we took our dog to the office, the doctor treated his broken leg.
12. The young woman flew the plane safely to Canada.

player  
actor  
secretary  
carpenter

hair stylist  
disc jockey  
florist  
barber

pilot  
teller  
cowboy  
veterinarian

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Proper nouns name a particular person, place, or thing. They always begin with a capital letter.

Example: Cassie Washington	→ a teacher
Wick's Shoe Store	→ Mr. Wick's store
Miguel's Surprise	→ a book in the library

Write a proper noun for each phrase. The first one is done for you.

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. a month    | <u>October</u> |
| 2. a game     | _____          |
| 3. a store    | _____          |
| 4. a city     | _____          |
| 5. a teacher  | _____          |
| 6. a magazine | _____          |
| 7. a holiday  | _____          |
| 8. a day      | _____          |
| 9. a friend   | _____          |
| 10. an actor  | _____          |
| 11. a school  | _____          |
| 12. a state   | _____          |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# ☆ In the Stars ☆

Name four proper nouns for each category.

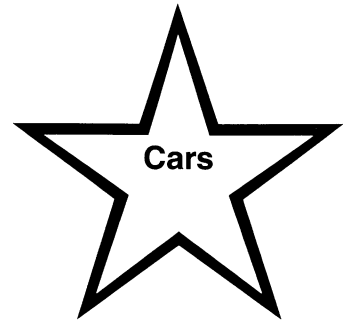


---

---

---

---



---

---

---

---



---

---

---

---

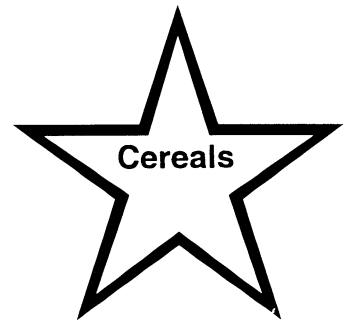


---

---

---

---



---

---

---

---



# X Marks the Spot

Read each word. If the word is a proper noun, underline it. Then, cross out the lowercase letter and write a capital above it. The first one is done for you.

1. dog      James      town      Los Anges
2. bag      man      mr. stailey      main street
3. mrs. hyde      texas      houston      exxon oil company
4. school      carver school      new york      canada
5. mini-mart      girl      lunch      dr. manter
6. shirt      superman      clock      cinderella
7. batman      home      lee college      lake houston
8. united states      paper      new york times      denver airport
9. friday      month      september      sherry
10. book      peter pan      you      name
11. mrs. salazar      gym      coach andrews      yard
12. car      tree      money      melissa
13. country      alaska      october      day
14. fork      meat      monday      february
15. jupiter      star      mario      nintendo®
16. five      cat      daniel      sunshine

# Pronoun FUN

A *pronoun* is a word that takes the place of a noun. Pronouns are used to make our writing sound less repetitious. Instead of using the name of a person, place, or thing over and over again, you can use a pronoun.

Words like *he*, *she*, *we*, *it*, *you*, and *they* are pronouns.

Mr. Hass went with us. **He** went with us.

The book is on the table. **It** is on the table.

Mrs. Green gave Laura the paper. Mrs. Green gave **her** the paper.

*Subject pronouns* are found in the subject of a sentence.

*Object pronouns* are found in the predicate of a sentence. They often follow action verbs. Object pronouns replace nouns that come after action verbs or words like *at*, *for*, *to*, or *with*.

Read each sentence. Choose a pronoun to take the place of the underlined words.

1. Cory put the pencil in his desk.
2. Tina is taking the boys to the soccer game.
3. Aaron fell off his bike.
4. I knew that Jenny and I were going to be late.
5. Kato and Matt practiced dribbling the ball.
6. The gymnasium was packed with people.

# TAKE MY PLACE

A *pronoun* is a word that takes the place of a noun. When you use words like *he, she, we, you, and they*, you're using a pronoun to take the place of a noun.

Read each sentence. Choose a pronoun to take the place of each underlined word. Write the pronoun on the line at the end of the sentence. Then, rewrite the sentence using the pronoun.

1. Diane had the leading role in the school play.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Lida and Chen studied at the library for two hours.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Jimmy and Lynn will be responsible for the project.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Tomorrow Sam and I will visit the new museum.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Carlos was elected captain of the football team.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

6. On Saturday Karen and I went to the movies.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

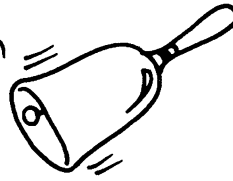
# Sign On With Pronouns

Choose a subject pronoun for each underlined word. Write your answer on the line at the end of the sentence. Then, write a new sentence using the subject pronoun.

1. The kitten hungrily lapped up the milk. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Mr. Thomas and Mrs. Smallwood are the leaders of our club. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Tashia only lives a few blocks from my house. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. This project requires a lot of work! \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. My friends and I are going to the park today. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The fire fighter was given an award for his bravery. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Jorge got a job at the grocery store. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. My teacher went home because she was sick. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# "Ring the Bell"



Let's ring the bell with a perfect score on this challenge. Read each sentence. Change each underlined word or words to a subject pronoun.

1. The king and queen led the parade down the street. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Our class drew a mural about the carnival. \_\_\_\_\_
3. My sister was chosen to be on one of the carnival floats. \_\_\_\_\_
4. My stepdad and I helped build one of the floats. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The parades are held every February. \_\_\_\_\_
6. One parade had 55 floats and was 10 miles long. \_\_\_\_\_
7. People came from many states to be a part of the festivities. \_\_\_\_\_
8. The boy had never been so excited! \_\_\_\_\_
9. Olga was looking forward to the carnival. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Dave and I ate a lot of great food. \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Check Up and Out

Check out what you know with these sentences. Read each sentence and the phrase under each line. Choose a pronoun from the box to complete each sentence. You'll use some pronouns more than once.



1. \_\_\_\_\_ is going to write a letter.  
The girl
2. \_\_\_\_\_ rode horses in the parade.  
John and Max
3. \_\_\_\_\_ were born on the same day in August.  
My cousin and I
4. \_\_\_\_\_ barked under my window all night!  
Mrs. Cox's dog
5. \_\_\_\_\_ made a beautiful scene.  
The sunset
6. \_\_\_\_\_ submitted a project together for the science fair.  
Su Lee and Chan
7. \_\_\_\_\_ is a police officer in Austin, Texas.  
My dad
8. \_\_\_\_\_ won the best attendance award for the month.  
My class

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Let's Pretend

Pretend that each of these phrases begins a sentence. Choose a pronoun to replace each phrase.

- |                    |       |                     |       |
|--------------------|-------|---------------------|-------|
| 1. The book        | _____ | 8. The boy and girl | _____ |
| 2. My mom          | _____ | 9. Mr. Stailey      | _____ |
| 3. My friend and I | _____ | 10. Aunt Kathy      | _____ |
| 4. The store       | _____ | 11. Harry           | _____ |
| 5. Linda           | _____ | 12. Mrs. King       | _____ |
| 6. My dog          | _____ | 13. The table       | _____ |
| 7. Mrs. Johnson    | _____ | 14. The school      | _____ |

Now underline the pronouns in these sentences.

15. My friend and I are going to see Jules in September.

16. They live on a ranch and we are going there soon.

17. We plan to move this summer.

18. When they come, we will go to the movies.

19. She passed out the candy she made.

20. I was excited about it.

Name \_\_\_\_\_



The words *I* and *me* are pronouns. Use *I* in front of the verb in a sentence. Use *me* after the verb. Choose *I* or *me* to make each sentence correct.

1. (I, Me) will be able to finish my work today.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. (I, Me) like to go to the lake.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. James showed the book to (I, me).

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Tomorrow, (I, me) am going to be the team leader.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. (I, Me) was very surprised when you came to visit.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. The brightly colored present was for (I, me).

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Doug and (I, me) spent the afternoon at the arcade.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Kelsey went to the movies with (I, me).

\_\_\_\_\_

9. (I, Me) tried as hard as I could.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. Mrs. Parker gave (I, me) a pencil.

\_\_\_\_\_



# Choose One

Which do we use, *I* or *me*? Complete each sentence with the correct pronoun.

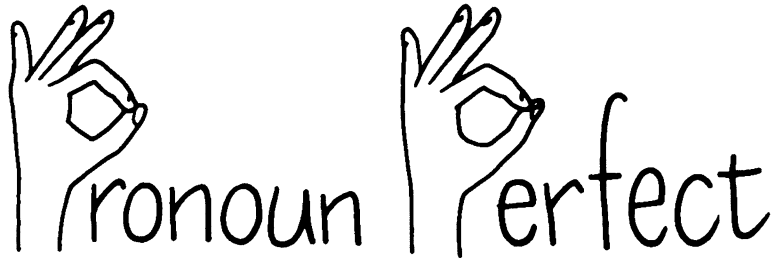
1. \_\_\_\_\_ saw you when you were waiting for the bus.
2. You didn't give the book to \_\_\_\_\_ on Thursday.
3. You and \_\_\_\_\_ are going to meet tomorrow.
4. Would you please bring the schedule to \_\_\_\_\_ by noon?
5. Do you remember meeting \_\_\_\_\_ at the fair?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ want you to know where the key is.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ washed our clothes.
8. You asked \_\_\_\_\_ when we were leaving for lunch.
9. You and \_\_\_\_\_ need to plan the party.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ need to get a present for my grandpa.
11. Which paper did you buy for \_\_\_\_\_ at the store?
12. Can you give \_\_\_\_\_ a clue?
13. \_\_\_\_\_ think Barb lost your phone number.
14. Can you drive Jason and \_\_\_\_\_ to the ball game?

# It's the Object

Object pronouns often follow action verbs. They replace nouns that follow action verbs or words like *at*, *for*, *to*, or *with*. Read the following sentences. Change the underlined noun to an object pronoun. Write the pronoun above the underlined word. Some object pronouns are listed in the box to help you.

you	it
him	us
her	me
them	

1. Chuck wrote a story to give to Maria.
2. The baseball coach told the boys to meet the driver at noon.
3. Carl entered the race with the boy.
4. Please give Heather the ticket to get in the movie with Kendra.
5. I helped Richard and Charles with the report.
6. Lance talked to Alice on the phone for over an hour!
7. The artist gave Janice and me a drawing of the woman.
8. Mr. Meyers gave Carol a book to give to Mario and Jim.
9. I saw Jake hiding your shoe behind the couch.
10. It's time for you and me to go see Javier and Tony at the office.



Some pronouns follow action verbs or words like *at*, *for*, *to*, or *with*. These pronouns are called *object pronouns*. Some object pronouns are *me*, *you*, *him*, *her*, *it*, and *them*.

Read each sentence. Change each underlined noun to an object pronoun. Write the pronoun above the underlined word.

1. The baby threw the blocks out of the playpen.
2. Mary Lynn gave Sue a book to return to Marcus.
3. The carpenter met the people at the building site.
4. Jesse gave the paper to the next-door neighbor.
5. Write the address down to help this person remember.
6. Kayla and Dana wrote a story and gave a copy to Mr. Perkins.
7. I gave the package to Mr. and Mrs. Houseman this morning.
8. The teacher gave Marcy and me a copy of the school song.
9. Let's pick up our friends on the way to visit Lindy.
10. It would be fun for you and me to be with Jane and Jerry in the play.

# Underline It

Underline the object pronouns in each sentence. Remember that *me*, *you*, *him*, *her*, *it*, *us*, and *them* are object pronouns.

1. The seamstress made a jacket for him.
2. Mrs. Thomas put it on the table for her.
3. The principal gave us awards for perfect attendance.
4. An artist drew a picture of the city for them.
5. Coach Holmes showed us the plays for the game.
6. Terry shouted for me to join them.
7. My mom rushed to meet us for the show.
8. Our teacher gave her a B on the project.
9. The ticket didn't have the correct price on it.
10. Who would like to go with me?
11. My friend saw her at the fair last Saturday.
12. We are going with them to see it next week.
13. The engineer gave them a tour of the plant.
14. Dad picked it up and gave it to him.



When a noun is possessive, it shows ownership, like *Jane's book*. Pronouns can also be possessive. Instead of *Jane's book*, it can be *her book*. The word *her* takes the place of *Jane's*. Rewrite each phrase below using a possessive pronoun instead of the noun.

1. Trevor's book \_\_\_\_\_
2. the bird's wing \_\_\_\_\_
3. Mom's pie \_\_\_\_\_
4. Lance's game \_\_\_\_\_
5. the book I have \_\_\_\_\_
6. Grandma and Grandpa's car \_\_\_\_\_
7. Sarah and John's dog \_\_\_\_\_
8. the ring she owns \_\_\_\_\_
9. the homework I have \_\_\_\_\_
10. the smell of the cake \_\_\_\_\_
11. the points of the pencils \_\_\_\_\_
12. the meeting of the principals \_\_\_\_\_

# ARE YOU CONFUSED?

Don't get confused when you write possessive pronouns. Just think about what you read! Write each phrase using a possessive pronoun. The first one is done for you.

1. the book that I have my book
2. the dress the girl wore \_\_\_\_\_
3. the game Bo and Jim played \_\_\_\_\_
4. the grass of the building \_\_\_\_\_
5. the cake you made \_\_\_\_\_
6. the prize the boy won \_\_\_\_\_
7. the limousine of the actress \_\_\_\_\_
8. the house of Ann and Peter \_\_\_\_\_
9. the horse of the boy \_\_\_\_\_
10. the program of the children \_\_\_\_\_
11. the book of the woman \_\_\_\_\_
12. the crown of the king \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_



You can be proud because you're learning to use pronouns correctly. Pronouns and nouns can be possessive. Use a possessive pronoun to take the place of each possessive noun.

Example: Sue's game **her game**

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. the dog's paw _____        | 11. the car's tires _____    |
| 2. Zachary's book _____       | 12. the man's cane _____     |
| 3. Misty's letter _____       | 13. the queen's castle _____ |
| 4. Sara's and my paper _____  | 14. the waiter's tray _____  |
| 5. the school's team _____    | 15. Uncle Don's shoes _____  |
| 6. the ship's crew _____      | 16. the teacher's pens _____ |
| 7. my uncle's son _____       | 17. the woman's basket _____ |
| 8. the boys' hats _____       | 18. the girls' dance _____   |
| 9. the lion's roar _____      | 19. Larry's friend _____     |
| 10. Aunt Kate's cookies _____ | 20. Angie's game _____       |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Snug as a Bug

You'll be as snug as a bug in a rug because you're learning how to use pronouns! Use a possessive pronoun to take the place of each possessive noun.

- |                        |       |                               |       |
|------------------------|-------|-------------------------------|-------|
| 1. Marc's family       | _____ | 11. my aunt's home            | _____ |
| 2. the book's pages    | _____ | 12. the plant's leaves        | _____ |
| 3. Jose and Tim's play | _____ | 13. Uncle Brett's friend      | _____ |
| 4. Lynn's and my paper | _____ | 14. the bird's nest           | _____ |
| 5. the boy's foot      | _____ | 15. Uncle Mario's chair       | _____ |
| 6. the road's curve    | _____ | 16. the dog's bone            | _____ |
| 7. the man's wife      | _____ | 17. Mrs. Warner's paints      | _____ |
| 8. the couple's car    | _____ | 18. Kerri's and my trip       | _____ |
| 9. the cat's kittens   | _____ | 19. Brandon and Max's clothes | _____ |
| 10. Dad's truck        | _____ | 20. the table's leg           | _____ |





You'll have success using possessive pronouns in these sentences. Remember, a possessive pronoun shows who or what owns something. Choose a pronoun from the box to complete each sentence. Some sentences can have more than one right answer.

my	his	its	their
your	her	our	

1. \_\_\_\_\_ class meeting is at 3:00 today.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ book is on the table.
3. The mother bird fed \_\_\_\_\_ babies in the nest.
4. We'll meet \_\_\_\_\_ group by the library.
5. The team lost \_\_\_\_\_ championship game.
6. The dog hurt \_\_\_\_\_ leg when it chased the car.
7. Larry left \_\_\_\_\_ notebook in the gym.
8. Grandma baked \_\_\_\_\_ favorite cookies for my party.
9. The woman lost \_\_\_\_\_ purse when she was shopping.
10. Jana and Raphael finished \_\_\_\_\_ reports.
11. Is this \_\_\_\_\_ paper on my desk?
12. The kitten ate \_\_\_\_\_ food quickly.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ coats were hung in the hall.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ name wasn't written correctly.

# MAKE A CHOICE

Read each sentence and choose the correct pronoun. Write the new sentences on the lines.

1. (I, Me) went to the store to buy a loaf of bread.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. (We, Us) need to stop by the library and return our books.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. (Her, She) is my cousin from Tennessee.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Gary gave a birthday present to (I, me).

\_\_\_\_\_

5. (I, Me) wrote a thank you note to (he, him).

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Our teacher read a story to (we, us) about an island.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. (They, Them) went shopping at the mall.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. (Him, He) parked his car in a tow-away zone.

\_\_\_\_\_

# Who Did That?

Check out these sentences. Choose the pronoun(s) that makes the sentences correct.

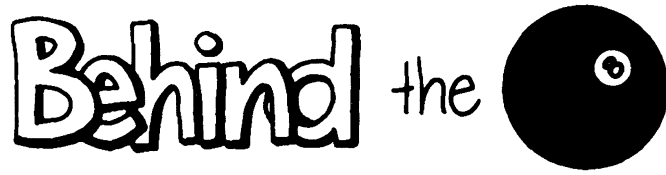
1. Can you give (we, us) the address?
2. Please give this book to (she, her) when you go.
3. (We, Us) left the airport at 9:00 last night.
4. The teacher gave an assignment to (he, him).
5. I saw (he, him) with (she, her) at the store yesterday.
6. (He, Him) wrote a letter telling (she, her) about the meeting.
7. (She, Her) laughed at the funny joke (he, him) told us.
8. (We, Us) saw (he, him) get on the bus to go home.
9. (He, Him) went to (she, her) store to get a present.
10. The last time we saw (she, her) was at (he, his) party.
11. When you tell (he, him) about (she, her), (we, us) can leave.
12. (We, Us) need to get busy so (we, us) can visit (he, him).

Name \_\_\_\_\_

Jump On

Jump on the bandwagon and find all of the pronouns in these sentences. Circle each one.

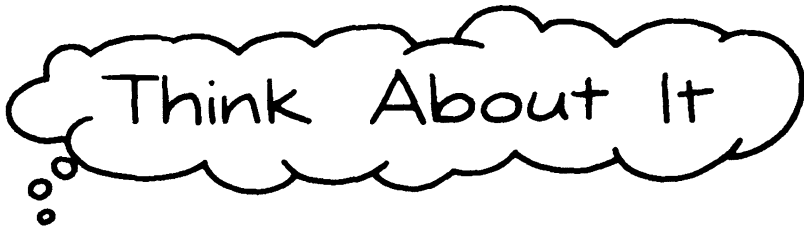
1. It is the last day before we go on vacation.
2. Today they are going to move all of the furniture to the new house.
3. He will guide us on the rafting trip.
4. You can't fool me because I know you are just teasing!
5. We will have to hurry home before the rain begins.
6. She is my best friend.
7. You will have to take the people because they don't know the way.
8. I am so glad that you have had a good time visiting us.
9. I can't take him to the library today because I am going the other way.
10. It fell out of the nest and landed on the ground where I found it.
11. I asked them to stop by after school to see you.
12. He will bring the package to you so you can mail it.
13. Tomorrow they will be traveling with them.
14. I will begin supper when they arrive.



Don't get caught behind the eight ball without knowing your pronouns! Find the pronouns in the sentences. Underline them.

1. They worked the puzzle by themselves.
2. We can go shopping when they are through with lunch.
3. Calvin helped himself to my dessert.
4. They are glad he solved it in such a short time.
5. I am waiting so we can meet them after class.
6. They liked playing ball with us on Saturdays.
7. Most of it will be gone by the time they get here.
8. We can't leave him at their house.
9. I will walk him to the vet if you will go with me.
10. The first time we saw them was at the park with you.
11. It will be her last day to work with us.
12. The mail carrier brought your package to us.

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Think about pronouns. Read each sentence. Underline each pronoun. See if you can find all 54 pronouns!

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. I am going to see it today.              | 13. You are my best friend.           |
| 2. I ate my lunch with her.                 | 14. They are coming to see me.        |
| 3. Will you help me finish it?              | 15. I put them on their steps.        |
| 4. It hurt its leg.                         | 16. I saw them at the store.          |
| 5. She wrote them a letter about our visit. | 17. Your mom will pick me up.         |
| 6. We are going to get our tickets today.   | 18. Did you give this to me?          |
| 7. Their puppy lost its collar.             | 19. How many of you have your books?  |
| 8. Bring their cards to me, please.         | 20. She paid us for our work.         |
| 9. Ari saw his dog chase their cat.         | 21. Your shirt is just like my shirt! |
| 10. I don't want your family to move.       | 22. You and I should begin again.     |
| 11. We visited their city last year.        | 23. His coat fell on it.              |
| 12. Ask me if you need help with your work. | 24. Her friend is staying with them.  |

# Verbs, Verbs

Verbs are words that show action or make a statement. They tell us what the subject of a sentence is or what the subject of the sentence does. A *verb* is the main word in the predicate of any sentence.

Verbs also tell us when an action takes place. They tell whether the action is taking place now, in the future, or in the past.

Verbs are written in different tenses. The tense of a verb tells the time something happened. The three tenses of verbs are *past*, *present*, and *future*.

- Present tense verbs tell what is happening now.  
Tyrell **whistles** to the robin in the nest.
- Past tense verbs tell what happened.  
Tyrell **whistled** to the robin in the nest.
- Future tense verbs tell what will happen.  
Tyrell will **whistle** to the robin in the nest.

There are different kinds of verbs.

- regular verbs
- irregular verbs
- helping verbs

Underline the verb in each sentence.

1. Trent jumped onto the step.
2. The monkey climbs the tree.
3. Kristy screamed with excitement.
4. You will have to call me sometime.
5. Amanda is going to have lunch with me today.
6. I will give you the book before the test.

# What's A Verb?

Verbs are words that tell us what happens or what people or things do. For example, people can laugh, walk, or play. Things can open, move, or push. To learn about verbs, think about what people and things can do.

Read the phrases. Choose a verb from the box to show what each person or thing does. Use a different verb for each one.

learn  
crack  
help  
roll  
turn  
falls  
shine

speak  
wiggle  
write  
paint  
bark  
hop  
nail

1. stars \_\_\_\_\_

2. dogs \_\_\_\_\_

3. teachers \_\_\_\_\_

4. worms \_\_\_\_\_

5. authors \_\_\_\_\_

6. doorknobs \_\_\_\_\_

7. voices \_\_\_\_\_

8. rabbits \_\_\_\_\_

9. carpenters \_\_\_\_\_

10. eggs \_\_\_\_\_

11. rain \_\_\_\_\_

12. tires \_\_\_\_\_

13. students \_\_\_\_\_

14. artists \_\_\_\_\_



Name \_\_\_\_\_

# It's A Challenge

An *action verb* is a word that shows action. It tells what the subject does.  
Kira **walks** to school.

Write an action verb after each noun. Be sure to use a different verb for each one.

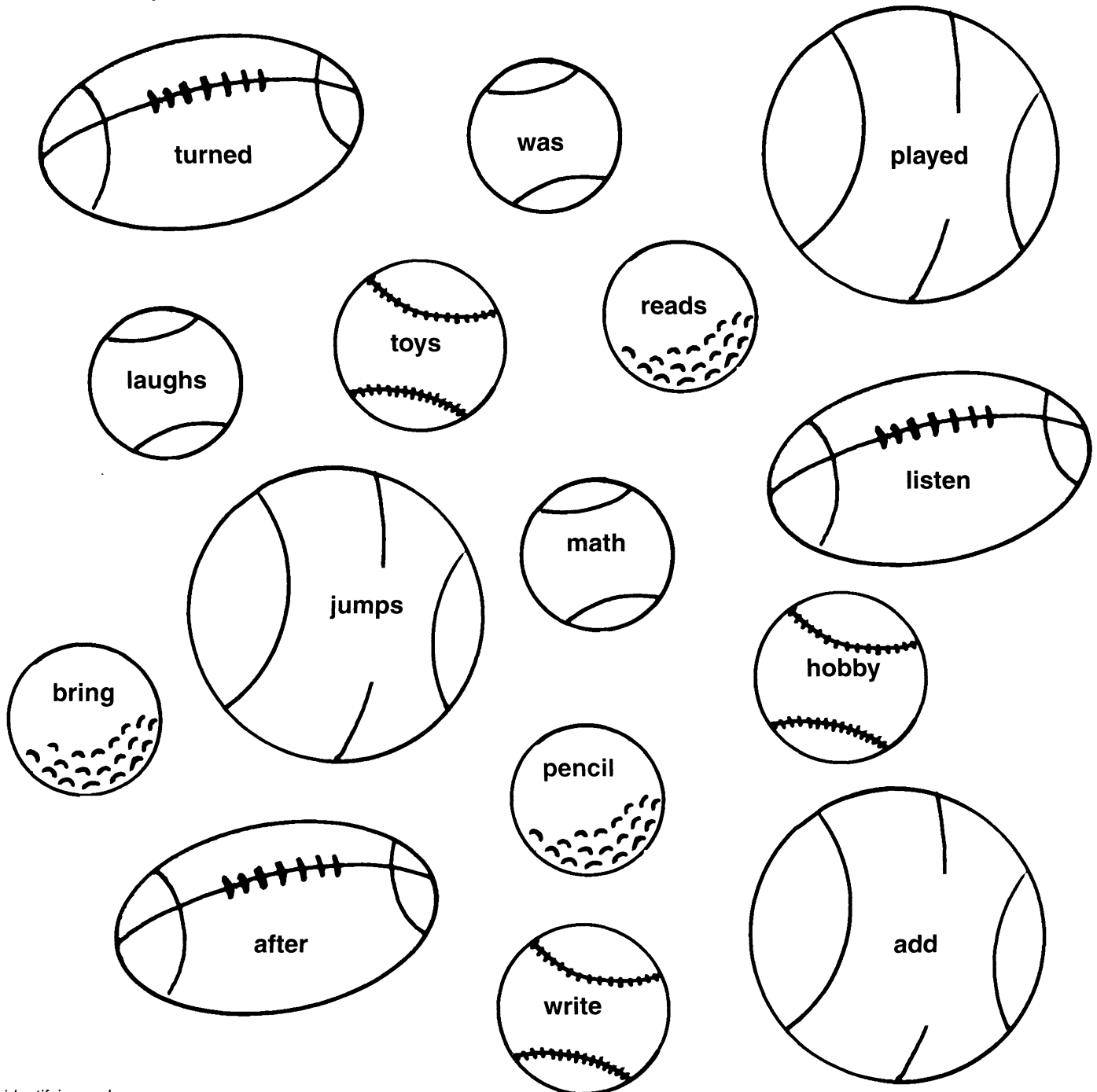
- |                   |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Flowers _____  | 9. The dog _____        |
| 2. The boy _____  | 10. Tops _____          |
| 3. Kites _____    | 11. My teacher _____    |
| 4. Sue _____      | 12. Spiders _____       |
| 5. The baby _____ | 13. A friend _____      |
| 6. Pens _____     | 14. Snakes _____        |
| 7. Bees _____     | 15. Aunt Charlene _____ |
| 8. The wind _____ | 16. Stars _____         |

Challenge your classmates to a contest. How many action verbs can each of you think of?

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Play Ball

It's time to play ball! Read each word. If it's an action verb, color the ball yellow. Color the other balls any color.



Name \_\_\_\_\_

# SPRING INTO ACTION

Spring into action by adding a noun to each verb. Be sure to use a different noun with each verb.

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. _____ play.   | 11. _____ sing.    |
| 2. _____ jump.   | 12. _____ call.    |
| 3. _____ cry.    | 13. _____ swim.    |
| 4. _____ fly.    | 14. _____ sleep.   |
| 5. _____ burn.   | 15. _____ smell.   |
| 6. _____ shake.  | 16. _____ crawl.   |
| 7. _____ grow.   | 17. _____ hop.     |
| 8. _____ run.    | 18. _____ shine.   |
| 9. _____ bark.   | 19. _____ spin.    |
| 10. _____ climb. | 20. _____ twinkle. |



# It's Story Time



You know that you can't write a story without verbs! Imagine you're writing a story using these phrases. Choose a verb that makes sense for each phrase.

Example: close the door

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. _____ a tree           | 13. _____ your hands    |
| 2. _____ a snack          | 14. _____ a cow         |
| 3. _____ a race           | 15. _____ your meat     |
| 4. _____ a package        | 16. _____ in a play     |
| 5. _____ bread            | 17. _____ a fish        |
| 6. _____ a knot           | 18. _____ a man         |
| 7. _____ an error         | 19. _____ the telephone |
| 8. _____ a house          | 20. _____ your knee     |
| 9. _____ an apple         | 21. _____ to the base   |
| 10. _____ a picture       | 22. _____ your dog      |
| 11. _____ through a straw | 23. _____ your hair     |
| 12. _____ a piano         | 24. _____ the kitchen   |

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Read each sentence. Find a word in the box to make each sentence correct. Be careful!  
You won't use all of the words.

eats	cleaned	washes	drives
smelled	scratched	sneezed	laughed
wrote	drew	played	lay
mailed	broke	pulled	slept
pushed	delivered	climbed	cried

1. Alan \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers on the teacher's desk.
2. The mail carrier \_\_\_\_\_ the package.
3. Ernesto \_\_\_\_\_ to the top of the tree to get the cat.
4. Alicia and Susana \_\_\_\_\_ at the clown.
5. Mom \_\_\_\_\_ the house before the party.
6. Charles always \_\_\_\_\_ his hands before he eats dinner.
7. My stepdad \_\_\_\_\_ a truck for the Campbell Company.
8. Lee \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful picture of some deer.
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ to the president of the company.
10. Tina \_\_\_\_\_ the piano in a concert Friday night.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ a package to my friend in Arkansas.
12. Wendy \_\_\_\_\_ her head in amazement.
13. Our cat \_\_\_\_\_ on the rug and \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Colin \_\_\_\_\_ when he \_\_\_\_\_ the glass.

# MISSING VERBS

The verbs in these sentences have disappeared! See if you can solve the mystery of the missing verbs. Add a verb that makes sense to each sentence.

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. _____ an egg.         | 14. _____ a rope.        |
| 2. _____ the table.      | 15. _____ in the chair.  |
| 3. _____ a book.         | 16. _____ her hair.      |
| 4. _____ the meal.       | 17. _____ the ball.      |
| 5. _____ your homework.  | 18. _____ to bed.        |
| 6. _____ the dog.        | 19. _____ the tree.      |
| 7. _____ a song.         | 20. _____ the lawn.      |
| 8. _____ your milk.      | 21. _____ up your coat.  |
| 9. _____ the bed.        | 22. _____ the bread.     |
| 10. _____ the dishes.    | 23. _____ on the TV.     |
| 11. _____ off the radio. | 24. _____ the bell.      |
| 12. _____ the bus.       | 25. _____ the telephone. |
| 13. _____ his hands.     | 26. _____ the stairs.    |

# IT'S NO TRICK

There's no trick to this! Each sentence is asking for a particular word. Write it in the blank.

1. When you go to bed, you \_\_\_\_\_.
2. When you go up a ladder, you \_\_\_\_\_ it.
3. After you make supper, you \_\_\_\_\_ it.
4. As you drink a glass of milk, you \_\_\_\_\_ the milk.
5. When you ring a doorbell, you \_\_\_\_\_ the button.
6. If you mow the grass, you \_\_\_\_\_ it.
7. When you make a phone call, you \_\_\_\_\_ the numbers.
8. When you brush your teeth, you \_\_\_\_\_ them.
9. When you jump rope, you \_\_\_\_\_ the rope.
10. When you use a pencil, you \_\_\_\_\_ with it.
11. When you travel, you \_\_\_\_\_ somewhere.
12. When you use a bow and arrow, you \_\_\_\_\_ it.

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Think of three action verbs that begin with each letter. Then, act out the words in a game with your friends.

A	_____	_____	_____
C	_____	_____	_____
T	_____	_____	_____
I	_____	_____	_____
O	_____	_____	_____
N	_____	_____	_____
V	_____	_____	_____
E	_____	_____	_____
R	_____	_____	_____
B	_____	_____	_____
S	_____	_____	_____



# SWING INTO ACTION

Swing into action by matching verbs. Read each word. Match a word from the right that means the same or almost the same as the verb on the left. Write the letter on the line. The first one is done for you.

- |                         |            |
|-------------------------|------------|
| 1. <u>  G  </u> ruin    | A. repair  |
| 2. <u>      </u> lift   | B. catch   |
| 3. <u>      </u> hide   | C. exclude |
| 4. <u>      </u> hug    | D. conceal |
| 5. <u>      </u> fix    | E. permit  |
| 6. <u>      </u> trap   | F. erect   |
| 7. <u>      </u> let    | G. spoil   |
| 8. <u>      </u> help   | H. elevate |
| 9. <u>      </u> omit   | I. embrace |
| 10. <u>      </u> show  | J. injure  |
| 11. <u>      </u> build | K. exhibit |
| 12. <u>      </u> hurt  | L. assist  |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Change It

Read each sentence. Change each underlined word to a more descriptive action verb. Write it on the line. The first one is done for you.

1. The nurse helped the doctor during the operation. assisted

2. The crowd yelled for their winning football team. \_\_\_\_\_

3. The race car driver drove around the track. \_\_\_\_\_

4. The mail carrier brought the mail to our door. \_\_\_\_\_

5. The artist drew a picture of the farm. \_\_\_\_\_

6. The king saw the cheering crowd. \_\_\_\_\_

7. The ambulance drove to the scene of the accident. \_\_\_\_\_

8. The lumberjack put the wood in a pile. \_\_\_\_\_

9. The actor said his lines during the play. \_\_\_\_\_

10. We'll stay where we are until the leader calls us. \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# BE A SUB

Read each sentence. Substitute a word from the box for the underlined verb. Write it on the line.

1. Farrah ran to help the girl who had fallen. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The surprised boy looked at the science experiment. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Jonathan wrote a letter to the editor of the school newspaper. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The girl valued her cousin's friendship. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The teacher used all of her skills to teach the lesson. \_\_\_\_\_
6. The couple was joined in marriage last Sunday. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The artist was upset about her lack of ideas. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Mr. Sanders will teach the laws of gravity to the science class. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Imagine the scene before you start to sketch. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The class reviewed the results of the experiment. \_\_\_\_\_

visualize	gawked
explain	composed
utilized	troubled
analyzed	dashed
cherished	united

# Something New

Many times when we write sentences or stories, we use the same verbs over and over. This can get kind of boring! Read each sentence. Find a substitute verb in the box for the underlined verb. Write the new verb on the line.

1. The thief admitted that he was guilty. \_\_\_\_\_
2. The storm caused us to clean up our yard. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The committee praised the heroic actions of the man. \_\_\_\_\_
4. We watched the eclipse of the sun. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The science teacher mixed the compounds together. \_\_\_\_\_
6. The electrician changed the wiring in the house. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The carpenter fixed the old piece of furniture. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Mr. Clark was hired to help students with their reading. \_\_\_\_\_

acknowledged	observed
modified	combined
commended	restored
employed	prompted

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Choose One

Read each phrase and think about the tense of the verb. Is the phrase talking about the present, the past, or the future? Choose the correct tense and write it in the blank. The first one is done for you.

- |                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <u>future</u> they'll go | 13. _____ Benito went     |
| 2. _____ he is              | 14. _____ Joe did         |
| 3. _____ my aunt will see   | 15. _____ the nurse ran   |
| 4. _____ we'll play         | 16. _____ it will be      |
| 5. _____ I will leave       | 17. _____ she drives      |
| 6. _____ they say           | 18. _____ you will take   |
| 7. _____ Uncle Liam came    | 19. _____ it is ringing   |
| 8. _____ my friend likes    | 20. _____ you heard       |
| 9. _____ I will save        | 21. _____ Sondra plays    |
| 10. _____ Alicia drove      | 22. _____ We will make    |
| 11. _____ Kara wrote        | 23. _____ Josh is working |
| 12. _____ we ducked         | 24. _____ the dog barks   |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# VERB TENSE CHART

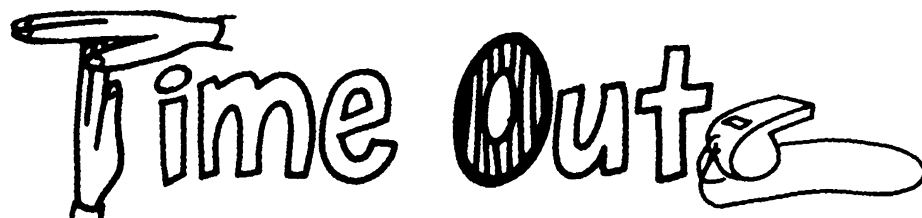
The tense of a verb tells when something happens. The *present tense* of a verb talks about what is happening right now. The *past tense* of a verb talks about what happened yesterday. The *future tense* of a verb talks about what is going to happen.

Example:	dance	present tense (happening now)
	danced	past tense (happened yesterday)
	will dance	future tense (will happen in the future)

Fill in the chart with the correct verb for each tense.

past tense	present tense	future tense
cleaned		
	pick	
		will push
thought		
waited		
	kick	
		will wear
	pass	
came		

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Time out to think about time! When we're working with verbs, we use time to decide which verb to use in a sentence. You need to think about when the sentence is happening. Is it happening now (present tense), in the past, or in the future?

Present tense	tells us about what is happening now
Past tense	tells us about what happened before now
Future tense	tells us what will happen at a later time

Fill in the chart with the correct verb for each tense.

Present Tense	Past Tense	Future Tense
listen		
		will go
	dropped	
		will play
repeat		
	painted	

# LINK UP

Let's link up to verbs and think about what a verb tense means. The tense of a verb tells you the time something happened. The three tenses of verbs are *past*, *present*, and *future*.

Present: Kelly **helps** the children.  
Past: Kelly **helped** the children last week.  
Future: Kelly **will help** the children in a little while.

Read each sentence. Write the tense of the underlined verb on the line. The first one is done for you.

1. present I plan to go to the fair tomorrow.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ I worked on my project last night.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ My grandma is visiting us this week.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Donna will fix turkey sandwiches for lunch.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ We enjoyed touring the police station.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ I will help you study for your test on Friday.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Elise is writing a letter to her pen pal.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ My brother joined the fishermen on the boat.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ I have to go to the dentist.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The soldiers marched in the parade.



# MAKE A DECISION

Read each sentence. Decide whether the underlined verb is in the *past*, *present*, or *future* tense. Write the tense on the line.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ We watched the dog chase the van down the road.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Who will bring cups for our party tomorrow?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ I live in the country.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Our class is studying the French and Indian War.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Marilyn wrote her aunt a letter to thank her for the shirt.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The team will meet after school on Thursday.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ I am telling you that your paper is one of the best I've read!
8. \_\_\_\_\_ My teacher is reviewing all of the tests before handing them back.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ On Friday, we voted to have a school carnival.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ I went to the gym to exercise.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ I will write to you when I can.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Martin struck a match to light the fire in the fireplace.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ My family went to the grocery store.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ In a few years, I will graduate.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Special Job

You have a special job to do! Read each sentence. Underline the verb. Then, decide if the verb is present, past, or future tense. Write the tense on the line.

1. The books came in yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Bats like to eat insects. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Brad plays football every day after school. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The skiers raced down the mountain. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The meeting was held last night. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Our class is studying the Egyptian pyramids. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The buses lined up outside the school. \_\_\_\_\_
8. My family visited our neighbor when she got a new puppy. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I hear someone playing a piano in that building. \_\_\_\_\_
10. This summer we will go to see Yellowstone National Park. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Our principal gives each student a card on his or her birthday. \_\_\_\_\_
12. When we went to the bakery, snacks were served. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Many people choose to sit near the window on the bus. \_\_\_\_\_
14. You will need a ticket to get into the magic show. \_\_\_\_\_

# No Time Like The Present

Circle all of the present tense verbs.

hit

grew

took

like

sat

caught

blew

come

sing

run

eat

smile

lose

load

watched

fit

began

gave

knitted

find

play

roll

ate

hung

brought

write

lean

was

crawl

joke

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Hit A Home Run!



You'll hit a home run when you identify all of the present tense verbs in this word search puzzle. Circle each present tense verb in the word list. Then, find it in the puzzle. Be careful! Some of the words listed aren't present tense verbs.

fly  
know  
grew  
saw  
find  
sing  
wish

began  
rest  
take  
jump  
play  
bring  
drew

meet  
dress  
swim  
came  
think  
held  
fall



# IN THE PRESENT

Read each sentence. Choose the verb that makes each sentence present tense.

1. He (plays, played) the trombone in the school band.
2. They (work, worked) at the factory near the highway.
3. Many children (like, liked) to be on ball teams in the summer.
4. Marcia (washes, washed) dishes every day.
5. Mrs. Malone (traveled, travels) a lot during the winter.
6. Tia (hunted, hunts) for bugs for her collection.
7. Sometimes, our dog (chases, chased) after cars.
8. Jeff (colors, colored) pictures to help decorate the classroom.
9. Joanna (paints, painted) her picture.
10. Dale (followed, follows) the other children on the playground.
11. My teacher (changes, changed) the bulletin board every month.
12. T.J. quietly (pushed, pushes) the door closed in the library.

# TODAY and YESTERDAY

When we talk about the present, we're talking about things that are happening right now.  
When we talk about the past, we're talking about things that already happened.

Today I **work**. → This is happening now.

This morning, I **worked**. → This already happened.

Read the sentences written in the past tense. Rewrite the verb so it's in the present tense.

1. Yesterday, I worked. Today, I \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Yesterday, I jumped. Today, I \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Yesterday, I played. Today, I \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Yesterday, I looked. Today, I \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Yesterday, I counted. Today, I \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Yesterday, I colored. Today, I \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Yesterday, I walked. Today, I \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Yesterday, I laughed. Today, I \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Yesterday, I stacked. Today, I \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Yesterday, I watched. Today, I \_\_\_\_\_.

Now, write the past tense of each verb in the sentence.

11. Yesterday, Darren \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio. (listen)
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ basketball with my friends on Friday. (play)
13. Libby \_\_\_\_\_ her dad over the weekend. (visit)
14. Carly \_\_\_\_\_ up her books from the floor. (pick)
15. My teacher \_\_\_\_\_ his desk before he went home. (clean)



# Hop Into Learning

Hop into learning about *-ing*! When *-ing* is added to a verb, it shows that something is happening now, or in the present tense.

I am **working**.

When you add *-ing* to most words, you just add *-ing* to the base word. However, there are some words that are different.

When a word ends in a vowel-consonant-silent e pattern, drop the “e” and add *-ing*.

**make** → **making**

When a word has a consonant-vowel-consonant pattern, double the final consonant before adding the *-ing*.

**plan** → **planning**

Using the rules above, add *-ing* to each word.

1. look \_\_\_\_\_
2. like \_\_\_\_\_
3. shine \_\_\_\_\_
4. fan \_\_\_\_\_
5. watch \_\_\_\_\_
6. sing \_\_\_\_\_
7. spin \_\_\_\_\_
8. yell \_\_\_\_\_

9. time \_\_\_\_\_
10. run \_\_\_\_\_
11. cook \_\_\_\_\_
12. design \_\_\_\_\_
13. bake \_\_\_\_\_
14. sit \_\_\_\_\_
15. skip \_\_\_\_\_
16. shout \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# It Comes Easy

Adding *-ing* to words comes easy with practice! Think about the rules you know for adding *-ing* to verbs. Then, add *-ing* to each word below.

- |           |       |            |       |
|-----------|-------|------------|-------|
| 1. cover  | _____ | 14. smile  | _____ |
| 2. zip    | _____ | 15. twirl  | _____ |
| 3. nap    | _____ | 16. skip   | _____ |
| 4. hop    | _____ | 17. moan   | _____ |
| 5. stare  | _____ | 18. loan   | _____ |
| 6. creak  | _____ | 19. bat    | _____ |
| 7. roll   | _____ | 20. own    | _____ |
| 8. wrap   | _____ | 21. giggle | _____ |
| 9. laugh  | _____ | 22. put    | _____ |
| 10. place | _____ | 23. slide  | _____ |
| 11. tell  | _____ | 24. top    | _____ |
| 12. sign  | _____ | 25. sled   | _____ |
| 13. hug   | _____ | 26. jog    | _____ |



# VERBS PAST

When we put verbs in the past tense, we sometimes have to change the spelling of the word before adding the suffix *-ed*.

1. If the verb ends in a consonant plus *y*, change the *y* to *i*, and add *-ed*.

**reply → replied**

2. If the verb ends with a short vowel and a consonant, double the final consonant before adding *-ed*.

**trap → trapped**

3. If a verb ends with an *e*, drop the *e* and add *-ed*.

**care → cared**

Read each word. Make each one past tense by adding the suffix *-ed*.

1. marry \_\_\_\_\_

9. fray \_\_\_\_\_

2. plan \_\_\_\_\_

10. flip \_\_\_\_\_

3. dance \_\_\_\_\_

11. carry \_\_\_\_\_

4. worry \_\_\_\_\_

12. dare \_\_\_\_\_

5. tan \_\_\_\_\_

13. study \_\_\_\_\_

6. empty \_\_\_\_\_

14. name \_\_\_\_\_

7. fry \_\_\_\_\_

15. omit \_\_\_\_\_

8. hurry \_\_\_\_\_

16. close \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Verb Search

Read each verb in the list. Write the past tense of the verb on the line. Then, look for it in the puzzle. For example, if the word is *try*, you would look for the word *tried*. Good luck!

cry \_\_\_\_\_

hop \_\_\_\_\_

skip \_\_\_\_\_

pull \_\_\_\_\_

jump \_\_\_\_\_

carry \_\_\_\_\_

press \_\_\_\_\_

marry \_\_\_\_\_

fry \_\_\_\_\_

dry \_\_\_\_\_

bake \_\_\_\_\_

pop \_\_\_\_\_

pass \_\_\_\_\_

dip \_\_\_\_\_

study \_\_\_\_\_

fade \_\_\_\_\_

like \_\_\_\_\_

tap \_\_\_\_\_

rake \_\_\_\_\_

pry \_\_\_\_\_

B	M	M	A	R	R	I	E	D	O	P	U	W	A	S
L	H	O	P	P	E	D	I	R	C	R	W	A	T	K
J	A	U	U	K	E	L	I	I	O	I	V	N	A	I
U	A	N	L	D	I	P	P	E	D	E	P	O	P	P
M	N	O	L	X	A	U	F	D	C	D	R	E	P	P
P	E	O	E	C	A	E	Y	B	A	K	E	D	E	E
E	S	S	D	O	H	G	G	E	E	R	S	O	D	D
D	P	C	A	R	R	I	E	D	O	U	S	T	E	R
T	O	E	V	F	A	D	E	D	O	O	E	A	K	E
F	P	O	R	E	Z	A	D	R	L	E	D	O	R	U
R	P	A	K	E	S	T	U	D	I	E	D	A	R	
I	E	R	O	P	E	S	T	A	K	A	U	T	K	E
E	D	R	C	R	I	E	D	O	E	J	W	U	E	O
D	P	Y	E	T	S	E	D	R	D	O	O	R	D	T
U	P	A	S	S	E	D	R	A	E	S	T	O	N	E

# Past and Present

Read each sentence. They are written in the present tense. Rewrite the sentences so they are in the past tense.

Jackie **cleans** her room.  
Jackie **cleaned** her room.

1. Karen sneezes quietly.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Lisa watches the baby crawl on the floor.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Brendan waxes the car very carefully.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Caitlin tries to be the best tennis player in school.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Mason washes his hands before lunch.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Sarah calls her mom every day after school.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Wanda opens the boxes for her teacher.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Cory smiles all the time.

\_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# *Look To The Future*

A future tense verb uses the word *will* with another verb. When a verb is in the future tense, it tells you something you're going to do in the future. Read each sentence. Rewrite it in the future tense. The first one is done for you.

1. You helped me. *You will help me.* \_\_\_\_\_
2. Dan played today. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The kitten drank some water. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Snow fell this winter. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The bird sat on the branch. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Tracy played the piano. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The storm moved away. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Penny slept. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Our team won. \_\_\_\_\_
10. We hurried to finish. \_\_\_\_\_
11. The store closed early. \_\_\_\_\_
12. We stopped at noon. \_\_\_\_\_

# ✓ Checking It Out

Check out each sentence below. If the sentence is in the future tense, put a check mark in the blank.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Elena will be traveling home tomorrow.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. My teacher visited my home yesterday.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Jackson will be helping out with the children in the preschool room.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. I have planned to find a summer job.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Mr. Kim wants us to rake his yard.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. He'll soon be learning many new skills.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Next week, my family will go swimming at the lake.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Jess is working on the computer.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Kayla will be entering the art contest.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. I will make my bed after breakfast.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. Alex will empty the garbage each day after school.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 12. Angie is drinking a glass of milk with her meal.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 13. When you are finished writing, all of your sentences will be checked.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 14. My stepmother will play the piano for us after supper.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 15. The carpenter drove to the new building to deliver some tools.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 16. Our dog waits for us by the front door every day.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 17. I will help you on that problem shortly.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 18. Sonya won a prize for having the best-trained dog in the show.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 19. We will stop by the library to return the books.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 20. Misty wrote a letter to her pen pal in Canada.

# INTO THE FUTURE

Let's go into the future . . . the future tense, that is! Change each sentence to the future tense.

1. Marcus jumps high.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. I try hard.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. I go fast.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. The choir sings.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. It sounds good.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Garth reads the magazine.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. We hear the noise.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. You write a story.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. The track team runs.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. Linda shops.

\_\_\_\_\_

11. Amy bakes.

\_\_\_\_\_

12. You make the cookies.

\_\_\_\_\_

13. Lance votes.

\_\_\_\_\_

14. They play games.

\_\_\_\_\_

15. I laugh.

\_\_\_\_\_

16. Ethan works alone.

\_\_\_\_\_

Change each sentence from present tense to future tense. Write the new sentence on the line.

17. Mr. Goldstein listens to the weather report on the radio every day.

\_\_\_\_\_

18. Lee Wyn plays the violin in the school orchestra.

\_\_\_\_\_

# FROM YESTERDAY TO TOMORROW

Let's turn yesterday into tomorrow! Each sentence below is written in the past tense. Rewrite each one to show the future tense.

1. I worked very hard on my science project.

---

2. Sean wrote an article about recycling for the school newspaper.

---

3. Mr. Trahan climbed mountains in Colorado in the summer.

---

4. Marta and Ben wrote a play about the life of Abraham Lincoln.

---

5. She turned off the light and closed the door.

---

6. The soldiers marched in the big parade.

---

7. I finished my homework after dinner.

---

8. Terence played basketball with great skill.

---

# Irregular Verbs

A *regular* verb is a verb that forms its past tense by adding *-d* or *-ed*. An *irregular* verb is one that forms its past tense in some other way, either by changing the spelling of the word or not changing the word at all.

For example, the present tense of the verb *swim* is *swim*. To make the word *swim* past tense, you change the spelling of the word to *swam*.

Today I **swim**. Yesterday I **swam**.

There's no rule for knowing when a verb is irregular. You just have to memorize the verb forms.

Practice learning irregular verbs. Write the past tense of each verb.

- |          |       |           |       |
|----------|-------|-----------|-------|
| 1. write | _____ | 9. sing   | _____ |
| 2. take  | _____ | 10. bend  | _____ |
| 3. fly   | _____ | 11. dig   | _____ |
| 4. know  | _____ | 12. throw | _____ |
| 5. sit   | _____ | 13. run   | _____ |
| 6. stick | _____ | 14. think | _____ |
| 7. fall  | _____ | 15. leave | _____ |
| 8. see   | _____ | 16. wear  | _____ |

Write the correct verb form to complete each sentence.

- break 17. The mirror \_\_\_\_\_ when it fell to the floor.
- come 18. My aunt \_\_\_\_\_ to visit us last weekend.
- give 19. I \_\_\_\_\_ a present to Jordan on his birthday.
- ring 20. The telephone \_\_\_\_\_ after we were asleep.



Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Wear Your Thinking Cap!

Irregular verbs aren't so tricky when you have your thinking cap on! Read each word.  
Write the past tense form on the line.

1. teach \_\_\_\_\_

2. stand \_\_\_\_\_

3. bite \_\_\_\_\_

4. drink \_\_\_\_\_

5. mislead \_\_\_\_\_

6. take \_\_\_\_\_

7. ride \_\_\_\_\_

8. know \_\_\_\_\_

9. come \_\_\_\_\_

10. write \_\_\_\_\_

11. drive \_\_\_\_\_

12. blow \_\_\_\_\_

13. forget \_\_\_\_\_

14. lose \_\_\_\_\_

15. tear \_\_\_\_\_

16. pay \_\_\_\_\_

17. tell \_\_\_\_\_

18. speak \_\_\_\_\_

19. fly \_\_\_\_\_

20. give \_\_\_\_\_

21. ring \_\_\_\_\_

22. hold \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Use your super skills to change these present tense verbs to past tense. Write each past tense verb on the line.

1. ride \_\_\_\_\_

2. sing \_\_\_\_\_

3. hear \_\_\_\_\_

4. write \_\_\_\_\_

5. draw \_\_\_\_\_

6. fall \_\_\_\_\_

7. swim \_\_\_\_\_

8. buy \_\_\_\_\_

9. drink \_\_\_\_\_

10. fly \_\_\_\_\_

11. bind \_\_\_\_\_

12. build \_\_\_\_\_

13. will \_\_\_\_\_

14. do \_\_\_\_\_

15. sink \_\_\_\_\_

16. find \_\_\_\_\_

17. give \_\_\_\_\_

18. eat \_\_\_\_\_

Write the correct verb form to complete each sentence.

come 19. I \_\_\_\_\_ home very late last night.

begin 20. Franco \_\_\_\_\_ his project today.

see 21. He \_\_\_\_\_ the pelican eating fish.

sell 22. Neil \_\_\_\_\_ his car to the neighbors.

# VERB CHANGE

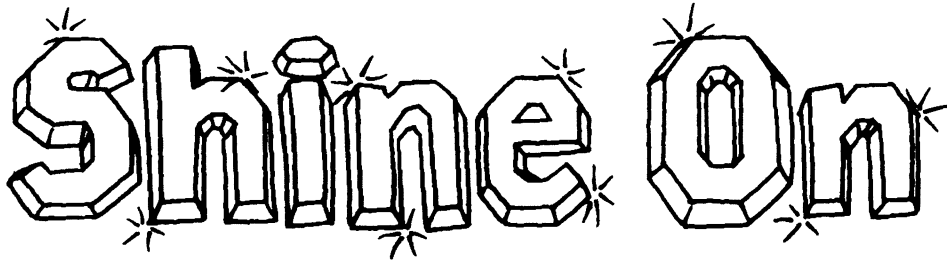
Some verbs change when the time changes! Here's a list of present or past tense verbs.  
Write the correct verb form in each blank.

Present	Past
1. steal	_____
2. _____	spoke
3. throw	_____
4. bite	_____
5. make	_____
6. hide	_____
7. freeze	_____
8. _____	heard
9. buy	_____
10. tell	_____
11. _____	broke
12. catch	_____
13. ring	_____
14. do	_____
15. _____	ate
16. find	_____
17. _____	built
18. sit	_____

# In the Past

Read each sentence. Write the correct past tense form of the verb in parentheses. Write your answer on the lines.

1. The carpenter \_\_\_\_\_ a new garage next to the house. (build)
2. That bee \_\_\_\_\_ me on the leg! (sting)
3. I thought I \_\_\_\_\_ her directions, but I was wrong. (understand)
4. When Kate got home, she \_\_\_\_\_ a glass of milk. (drink)
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ up the mountain to go camping. (ride)
6. Mr. Andretti \_\_\_\_\_ in a hurry because he was late for an appointment.  
(leave)
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ you said we were going to leave at 5:00. (think)
8. Our class \_\_\_\_\_ to the president of the company on our field trip. (speak)
9. Amber \_\_\_\_\_ the little boy's hand during the program. (hold)
10. John \_\_\_\_\_ a great tree to climb. (find)
11. The pitcher \_\_\_\_\_ the ball to the batter. (throw)
12. Marisa \_\_\_\_\_ me a letter about her trip. (write)



Your writing will shine when you learn to use irregular verbs correctly. Read each sentence. Change the word in parentheses to past tense and write it on the line.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ all of my books back to the library. (take)
2. My stepfather \_\_\_\_\_ us to the play at the auditorium on Saturday. (drive)
3. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ just what to do when Grant was sick. (know)
4. Our group \_\_\_\_\_ four songs for the music program. (sing)
5. The salesperson \_\_\_\_\_ Ahmed a new truck. (sell)
6. Alyssa \_\_\_\_\_ a match to light our campfire. (strike)
7. The outfielder \_\_\_\_\_ the ball with ease. (catch)
8. Jan \_\_\_\_\_ a citizen in our country. (become)
9. Our coach \_\_\_\_\_ us how to play soccer. (teach)
10. The children \_\_\_\_\_ their projects to school for the science fair. (bring)
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ the announcer call my name! (hear)
12. The dog \_\_\_\_\_ the rug in the bedroom. (tear)

# Be Mine

The verb *be* is one of the most irregular verbs in our language! It changes many times. Let's first look at the verb *be* in the present tense form. Here is its special present tense pattern.

Singular: I **am**  
              you **are**  
              he **is**  
              she **is**  
              it **is**

Plural: we **are**  
          you **are**  
          they **are**

Read each sentence. Use the examples above to help you find the correct form of the verb *be* to use. Write your answers on the lines.

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ one of the nicest people I know!
2. Lee \_\_\_\_\_ going to leave at noon tomorrow to go to his uncle's house.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ going to be late for school.
4. They \_\_\_\_\_ partners for the math contest.
5. It \_\_\_\_\_ no trouble to help you study for the test.
6. Shar \_\_\_\_\_ writing a poem for the school newspaper.
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ not supposed to walk inside the fenced-in area.
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ wearing the cool jacket you got for your birthday!
9. They \_\_\_\_\_ leaving for the meeting.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ sorry you won't be able to go with me.

# To Be Or Not To Be

To be or not to be? That is the question! It takes practice to learn how to use the verb *be*. When we use the verb *be* in the past tense, we use a special pattern.

Singular: I **was**  
you **were**  
he **was**  
she **was**  
it **was**

Plural: we **were**  
you **were**  
they **were**

Use the examples above to help you find the correct past-tense form of *be* to finish each sentence.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ hurrying to get ready when the doorbell rang.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ one of the best soccer players at the high school.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ tired after the race.
4. Terrell \_\_\_\_\_ glad when he heard he won the contest.
5. My best friend, Lupe, \_\_\_\_\_ absent from school for a week.
6. Whatever you \_\_\_\_\_ planning to watch on TV is fine with me.
7. They \_\_\_\_\_ trying to reach Cincinnati during the snowstorm.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ excited about the circus!
9. I'm so proud that you \_\_\_\_\_ the winner.
10. It \_\_\_\_\_ cold and rainy when we left the movie theater.
11. My grandma \_\_\_\_\_ a very sweet person.
12. Brian \_\_\_\_\_ a person you could always count on to help.

# Do You?

Using *do*, *did*, and *does* can be confusing! Use the word *does* when you're writing about one person, place, or thing *EXCEPT* when you're using the words *you* and *I*. Use *do* when you're writing about more than one person, place, or thing *AND* when you're using the words *you* and *I*. Use *did* when you're writing in the past tense.

Present Tense: We **do** the dishes.  
He **does** the dishes.  
I **do** the dishes.

Past Tense: I **did** the dishes.  
You **did** the dishes.  
He **did** the dishes.  
We **did** the dishes.  
You **did** the dishes.  
They **did** the dishes.

Use the correct form of *do* in each sentence.

1. Sidney \_\_\_\_\_ her chores every day after school.
2. The family from Germany \_\_\_\_\_ not understand English.
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ go to see the big parade after all.
4. Muhammad \_\_\_\_\_ not know what he's going to do.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ not like to eat cauliflower.
6. The team \_\_\_\_\_ play today, even though it rained.
7. The city workers \_\_\_\_\_ special work for the government last year.
8. Cherie \_\_\_\_\_ not like having to drive at night.
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ not know where the library book is.
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ such a good job on the test!



# Have, Has, or Had?

Like the word *be*, the word *have* can be a tricky irregular verb. It can be written three ways.

Present Tense: I **have**  
you **have**  
she **has**  
it **has**  
we **have**  
you **have**  
they **have**

Past Tense: I **had**  
you **had**  
he **had**  
she **had**  
it **had**  
we **had**  
you **had**  
they **had**

Read each sentence. Use the examples above to help you decide which form of the word *have* best fits. Write your answers on the lines.

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ to put a quarter in the machine to get it to work.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ saved thirty dollars since January.
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ to go to school when it was snowing.
4. They \_\_\_\_\_ traveled to their aunt's house for the past two summers.
5. Ben \_\_\_\_\_ a terrible headache when he got home yesterday.
6. Last month I \_\_\_\_\_ an invitation to a costume party.
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ written a very creative story!
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ to go to the store yesterday.
9. Did you \_\_\_\_\_ to turn in your journal to Mrs. Juarez?
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ so much I need to do before we leave!

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# A "Puzzling" Challenge

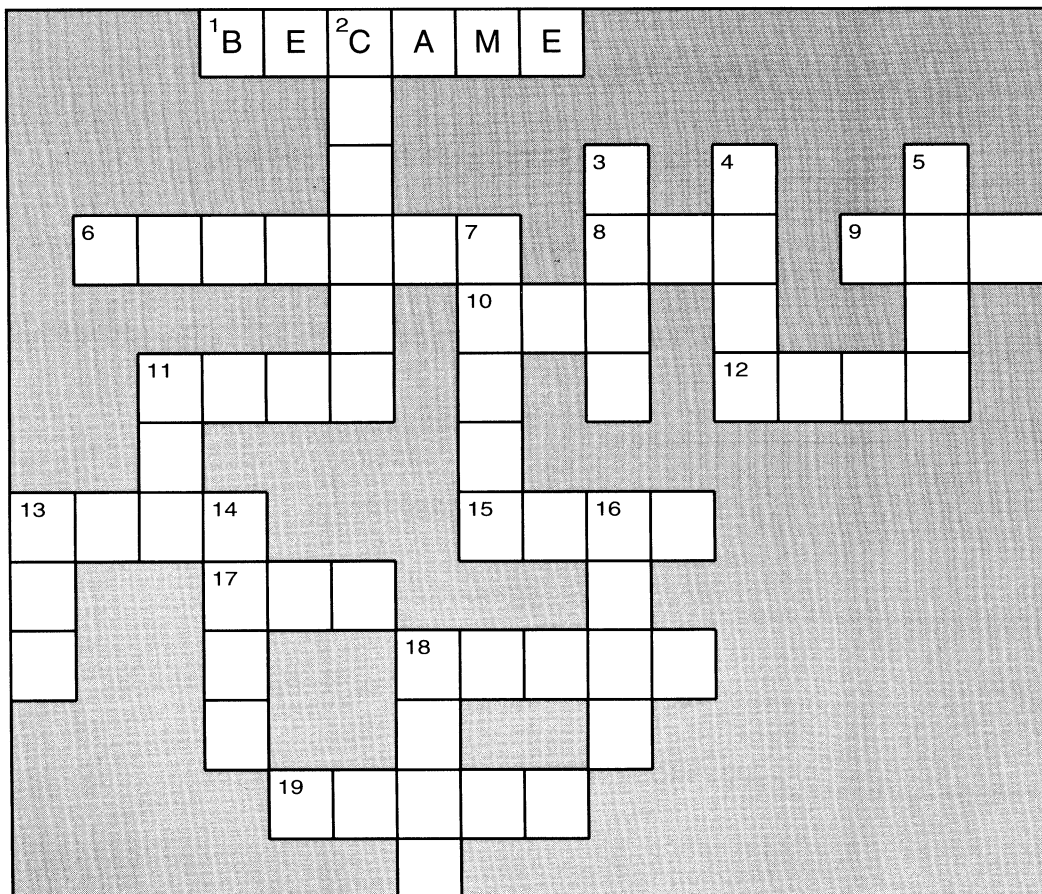
Here's a crossword challenge for you! Read each word. Write the past tense of the verb on the crossword puzzle. The first one is done for you.

## Across

1. become
6. think
8. eat
9. is
10. has
11. go
12. take
13. sing
15. wear
17. run
18. drink
19. sleep

## Down

2. catch
3. make
4. leave
5. sink
7. throw
11. win
13. see
14. grow
16. ring
18. draw



# A LITTLE HELP

Everyone needs help sometimes . . . even verbs. *Helping verbs* help the main verb to show action or make a statement. Helping verbs usually come before the main verb in a sentence, but not always.

**Beau is watching TV.**  
**Did you hear** about the party?

In the box you'll find examples of helping verbs.

am	do	has	was	should
is	did	have	were	could
are	will	had	would	may

Read each sentence. Underline the main verb and its helper. The first one is done for you.

1. Carol is playing a game with her friends.
2. We are having choir rehearsal tonight at 7:00 p.m.
3. Did Katie go to the rodeo yesterday?
4. I have finished my homework.
5. Larry will arrive from Chicago tomorrow.
6. Sandy will help you with your work sometime today.
7. I would like some water.
8. Thomas has seen the movie already.
9. We will be hanging the pictures in the family room.
10. Victor has written a letter to the company already.

# HELP IS ON THE WAY

There's so much to remember about verbs! But don't worry, help is on the way . . . *helping* verbs, that is! Helping verbs *help* the main verb to show action or make a statement. Here are some examples of helping verbs.

is	are	were	have
am	was	has	had

Choose a helping verb from the box to finish each sentence.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ finished all my work when the bell rang.
2. Manuel \_\_\_\_\_ helping me put the books on the shelf.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ going to the park for the arts fair.
4. The baby \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping when the telephone rang.
5. Anne's friends \_\_\_\_\_ planning a surprise party for her.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ found recipes from different cultures to share with the class.
7. Your dog \_\_\_\_\_ dug a huge hole in our backyard!
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ rushing to finish the project before class.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ listened to that radio station for a long time.
10. The girls \_\_\_\_\_ laughing at the wiggling puppies.
11. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ going to a play tonight.
12. Lynda \_\_\_\_\_ bought a new costume for the party.

# COUNT ON IT

The main verb in a sentence tells what the subject is doing. The helping verb usually comes right before the main verb. Helping verbs help the main verb tell exactly when something happened. The words *am*, *are*, and *is* can be used as helping verbs. You can count on these words to be followed by verbs that end in *-ing*.

Mary **is going** to the store.

We **are writing** a story.

I **am going** to school now.

Read each sentence. Then, read the verb in parentheses. Add a helping verb and change the verb in parentheses to make the sentence correct. The first one is done for you.

1. The boys are playing soccer after school today. (play)
2. Geese \_\_\_\_\_ south for the winter. (migrate)
3. The telephone \_\_\_\_\_, so please answer it. (ring)
4. Our coach \_\_\_\_\_ to Houston. (move)
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ to visit my grandparents. (go)
6. Rhonda \_\_\_\_\_ the piano right now. (practice)
7. They \_\_\_\_\_ a story for the school newspaper. (write)
8. Snow \_\_\_\_\_ all over the city. (fall)
9. The store \_\_\_\_\_ a special sale on Saturday. (have)
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ the books before I go. (stack)

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# What's The Rule?

Should you use *is* or *are*? The rule is to use *is* when you talk about one person, place, or thing. Use *are* with more than one person, place, or thing. Read each phrase. Decide if you should use *is* or *are*. Then, finish each sentence.

1. Aunt Molly \_\_\_\_\_
2. Friends \_\_\_\_\_
3. The plates \_\_\_\_\_
4. The school \_\_\_\_\_
5. The sun \_\_\_\_\_
6. Pencils \_\_\_\_\_
7. A man \_\_\_\_\_
8. The cereal \_\_\_\_\_
9. Jason \_\_\_\_\_
10. The map \_\_\_\_\_
11. The boys \_\_\_\_\_
12. The cat \_\_\_\_\_
13. Mustard \_\_\_\_\_
14. Monkeys \_\_\_\_\_
15. The boy \_\_\_\_\_
16. The flowers \_\_\_\_\_
17. Baseball \_\_\_\_\_
18. The tires \_\_\_\_\_
19. The teachers \_\_\_\_\_
20. The books \_\_\_\_\_

# MAKE A CHOICE

Choose *Is* or *Are* to complete each sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you going to take your books home?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ my brother coming to school today?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you buying that book?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you going to set the table?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ they going to the game on Friday?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Barb joining the writing club?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Bill and Kevin going to be in the play?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you bringing soil for our science experiment?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ you taking the books on the table?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ you learning how to use a computer?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ they eating lunch in the cafeteria today?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Laurie using this pencil?
13. \_\_\_\_\_ you going with Jessica?
14. \_\_\_\_\_ the school going to have a fall festival this year?
15. \_\_\_\_\_ your grandparents coming to the museum with you?

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Give It A Try

Remember that when you use the helping verb *is*, your subject is singular, or one thing. When you use the verb *are*, your subject is plural, or more than one thing. Give it a try by filling in the blanks with *is* or *are*.

1. Your new game \_\_\_\_\_ fun to play!
2. Who \_\_\_\_\_ going with me to the park?
3. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ going to the football game.
4. The store \_\_\_\_\_ near my apartment building.
5. Where \_\_\_\_\_ the glue?
6. The girls \_\_\_\_\_ waiting for their turns.
7. My stepmom \_\_\_\_\_ baking a cake for my birthday.
8. Friday \_\_\_\_\_ the last day to sign up for the field trip.
9. The dogs \_\_\_\_\_ chasing the truck.
10. This story \_\_\_\_\_ interesting.
11. The astronauts \_\_\_\_\_ training for a flight to Mars.
12. Several people \_\_\_\_\_ planning to go.



# The Race Is On

The race is on to learn about the helping verbs *is* and *are*. The word *is* is used with a singular subject. The word *are* is used with a plural subject and with the word *you*.

Examples:    He **is**      She **is**      You **are**      We **are**      They **are**

Write the correct helping verb in each sentence.

1. Our teacher \_\_\_\_\_ giving us some choices.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ going to tour the battleship tomorrow.
3. The students \_\_\_\_\_ planning to take their cameras.
4. The battleship \_\_\_\_\_ an old French warship.
5. Derek and Javier's uncle \_\_\_\_\_ meeting us at 9:00.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you interested in battleships?
7. Our tour \_\_\_\_\_ going to be great!
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ all looking forward to the field trip.
9. Several people \_\_\_\_\_ going to be touring with us.
10. We need to know what we \_\_\_\_\_ doing after the tour.
11. We \_\_\_\_\_ going on a field trip.
12. I wonder if any other school \_\_\_\_\_ going?

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Take Note



Take note when you use the words *was* and *were*. These helping verbs are used with main verbs that end with *-ing*. These helping verbs tell about things that happened in the past.

Read each sentence. Use *was* or *were* to make the sentence correct.

1. The dancers \_\_\_\_\_ trying to learn a new routine.
2. The basketball team \_\_\_\_\_ going to play at 7:00.
3. Sharise \_\_\_\_\_ playing the trumpet in the band before she moved.
4. Richard \_\_\_\_\_ planning to go camping with us.
5. The kitten \_\_\_\_\_ drinking water from the bowl.
6. Many students \_\_\_\_\_ voting for their class president.
7. Paulo \_\_\_\_\_ looking for his notebook.
8. My legs \_\_\_\_\_ hurting after the race.
9. The author \_\_\_\_\_ writing a story about rain forests.
10. The children \_\_\_\_\_ coming to the party.
11. Laurence \_\_\_\_\_ making a card for his grandpa.
12. The bus ride \_\_\_\_\_ over before we knew it!

# RIGHT ON TARGET

You'll be right on target when you learn how to use the helping verbs *was* and *were*. When the subject is singular, use the word *was*. When the subject is plural or the word *you*, use the word *were*. Read each sentence. Choose the correct helping verb to complete each sentence.

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ going to the movies with them.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ sitting under an oak tree.
3. Where \_\_\_\_\_ Lynn and John going yesterday?
4. The animals \_\_\_\_\_ being fed when we got there.
5. Sonya and Tim \_\_\_\_\_ working on the computer.
6. The cat \_\_\_\_\_ playing with the string.
7. Two people from our class \_\_\_\_\_ performing in the concert last night.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you hiding snacks under your desk?
9. Our principal \_\_\_\_\_ retiring.
10. Erik \_\_\_\_\_ making a model dinosaur like the ones from prehistoric times.
11. The man's stories \_\_\_\_\_ boring us.
12. Who \_\_\_\_\_ elected the first President of the United States?

# Focus **It**

Focus in on using the helping verbs *was* and *were*. If the subject is singular, use the word *was*. If the subject is plural, or the word *you*, use the word *were*. Complete each sentence using the correct word.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Mrs. Sakata going shopping?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ you going shopping, too?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Sharon and DeWayne laughing in study hall yesterday?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ they taking the math test when the fire alarm went off?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ your bike found by the detective?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the planes flying high?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ my radio too loud?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ the bath water overflowing?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ all the students wearing blue shirts?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ your sisters fighting when your parents got home?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ it raining when you came inside?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ you playing this game?
13. \_\_\_\_\_ the puppies squirming in the box?
14. \_\_\_\_\_ Jayne going to try out for the volleyball team?

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Was or Were ?

Be careful when you read these sentences! Choose the word *was* or *were* to make each sentence correct.

1. The fire fighters \_\_\_\_\_ rushing to help the people.
2. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ gathered to watch the fireworks.
3. Lynette \_\_\_\_\_ practicing for the math contest next week.
4. Our neighbor \_\_\_\_\_ making a lot of noise.
5. The teachers \_\_\_\_\_ meeting all morning.
6. Several flocks of geese \_\_\_\_\_ flying south for the winter.
7. The circus workers \_\_\_\_\_ putting up the tents.
8. Where \_\_\_\_\_ Tara going in such a hurry yesterday?
9. Last night, my dog \_\_\_\_\_ barking and he woke me up.
10. Who \_\_\_\_\_ planning to write an essay on Thomas Edison?
11. The children \_\_\_\_\_ listening quietly during the puppet show.
12. Gary \_\_\_\_\_ grinning from ear to ear as we left on our trip.

# Help Me!

Here's some more help with helping verbs. This time, think about the helping verbs *has* and *have*. *Have* is an irregular verb. When you use the present tense of *have*, use the verb *has* with the pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, or a singular noun.

I **have jumped**  
you **have jumped**  
he, she, it **has jumped**

we **have jumped**  
they **have jumped**  
the dog (singular noun) **has jumped**

Underline the correct verb form for each sentence.

1. I (has, have) bought a new game for us to play.
2. Paul (has, have) tried to write his story about pirates.
3. They (has, have) traveled a long way to come to this meeting.
4. Steven (has, have) brought a surprise for this afternoon.
5. You (has, have) done a good job of saving your money.
6. The boys (has, have) challenged us to a game of basketball.
7. Many people (has, have) come to the store's grand opening.
8. Tamar (has, have) been looking for the lost key all over the house.
9. Sofia and Carmen (has, have) planned to be in the talent show Thursday.
10. My aunt (has, have) worked in the car factory since last March.
11. We (has, have) not cleaned the bird cage for awhile, so let's get busy!
12. My parents (has, have) adopted three children.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# *Get a Jump*

Get a jump on learning about helping verbs. Read the sentences below. Use *have* or *has* to finish each sentence.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ bought several books at the new book store.
2. Alicia \_\_\_\_\_ written letters to different historical places for information.
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ visited the museum this week.
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ brought all the materials on the supply list.
5. Yoshiko \_\_\_\_\_ prepared for a piano recital this Friday.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ purchased two tickets for the concert.
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ asked a question I can't answer!
8. Karl \_\_\_\_\_ learned how to use the new computer at school.
9. Andrea and Alex \_\_\_\_\_ won second place in the science competition.
10. My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ been in the Navy for several years.
11. Don \_\_\_\_\_ learned how to speak French.
12. Mark \_\_\_\_\_ collected coins for a long time.
13. We \_\_\_\_\_ to buy groceries for the party.
14. Our sick dog \_\_\_\_\_ stopped eating.

# *Did You Know?*

When the verb *do* is used as a helping verb, its spelling changes, depending on the tense it is in. The chart shows you how the verb *do* changes in the present, past, and future tense.

Present:	I <b>do</b> , you <b>do</b> , he <b>does</b> , we <b>do</b> , you <b>do</b> , they <b>do</b>
Past:	I <b>did</b> , you <b>did</b> , he <b>did</b> , we <b>did</b> , you <b>did</b> , they <b>did</b>
Future:	I <b>will do</b> , you <b>will do</b> , he <b>will do</b> , we <b>will do</b> , you <b>will do</b> , they <b>will do</b>

Use the correct form of *do* in each sentence.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ not know where to begin.
2. Nicholas \_\_\_\_\_ not have to travel very far to get to school.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ they complete a special science experiment for extra-credit points?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you see that beautiful drawing?
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ eat meat, but only occasionally.
6. LaTrice \_\_\_\_\_ try to do her homework right after school, but sometimes she forgets.
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ not study over the weekend, so we had trouble on the test.
8. Marquite \_\_\_\_\_ not know which team she wants to join.
9. Kai and Reba \_\_\_\_\_ an African dance for the recital next weekend.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ you exercise during gym class?



# Will You?

Let's look at the helping verbs *will* and *would*. When we write in the present tense, we use the word *will*. When we write in the past tense, *will* changes to *would*.

Read each sentence. Underline the correct form of the verb *will*.

1. I (will, would) go to the football game tomorrow.
2. Dimitri (will, would) have come to see you, but he's been sick.
3. They (will, would) be coming into town on the 9:00 p.m. bus.
4. I (will, would) wait for you by the entrance to the park.
5. The fussy baby (will, would) not wait until his mother finished her lunch.
6. They (will, would) go in spite of the bad weather.
7. I (will, would) be ready in a few minutes.
8. Takeo (will, would) stay and wait for his mom to call.
9. We (will, would) have been happy to watch the baby for you.
10. (Will, Would) you help me tomorrow?

# Hand-in-Hand

A sentence must have a subject and a predicate, or verb. The subject is the *who* or *what* a sentence is about. The verb gives us information about the subject. The subject and verb work hand-in-hand.

If the subject of a sentence is singular, then the verb must also be singular.

Example: The **boy is** moving to Canada.

The example is talking about *one* boy, so we need to use the singular helping verb *is*.

If the subject of a sentence is plural, you must match it with a plural verb.

Example: **They are** moving to Canada.

The example is talking about more than one person, so we need to use the plural verb *are*.

When you use the personal pronouns *he*, *she*, or *it*, you usually have to add an -s or -es to make the verb agree.

Example: **She washes** the dishes every night.  
**It flies** away when it's frightened.

Read each phrase. Circle it if the subject and verb agree.

1. He are a really nice person.
2. We went to the store.
3. Sarah play the guitar.
4. This group works well together.
5. They are never on time.
6. My teacher go to the office at least once every day.

# Don't Disagree

Subjects and verbs don't like to disagree. When you're writing sentences, make sure the subjects and verbs agree with each other. The verb has to agree with the subject in number. For example, instead of saying, "The boy climb," we say, "The boy climbs."

Read each sentence. Underline the verb that agrees with the subject.

1. A ruler (help, helps) you draw straight lines.
2. Many doctors (work, works) long hours.
3. Flowers (grow, grows) in our yard during the summer.
4. I (like, likes) to read stories about the Old West.
5. Mr. Nye (play, plays) the accordion in a band.
6. Laura (practice, practices) the piano every day.
7. Grapes (grow, grows) on vines.
8. The races (begin, begins) at 3:00 on Saturday afternoon.
9. Many pilots (fly, flies) to Europe every week.
10. Madeline (weave, weaves) baskets for a hobby.
11. The boy (lift, lifts) weights on Mondays and Wednesdays.
12. Babies usually (fall, falls) asleep when they're rocked.

# EASY AS PIE

It's as easy as pie to make the subject and verb of a sentence agree. Sometimes you have to change the spelling of a verb to make the subject and verb agree. Here are three rules for spelling present tense verbs.

1. Add an **-s** to most verbs.
2. For verbs ending in **-s, -z, -x, -sh,** and **-ch**, add **-es**.
3. For verbs ending in a consonant plus **y**, change the **y** to **i** and add **-es**.

Read each verb phrase. Using the rules, change the verb in parentheses to fit each phrase.

1. the bird \_\_\_\_\_ (fly)
2. the chef \_\_\_\_\_ (bake)
3. the woman \_\_\_\_\_ (rush)
4. the dog \_\_\_\_\_ (scratch)
5. the child \_\_\_\_\_ (push)
6. the clerk \_\_\_\_\_ (sell)
7. the man \_\_\_\_\_ (watch)
8. the alarm \_\_\_\_\_ (buzz)
9. my friend \_\_\_\_\_ (guess)
10. the band \_\_\_\_\_ (march)
11. my stepmom \_\_\_\_\_ (listen)
12. the baby \_\_\_\_\_ (cry)

# Do They Agree?

Present tense action verbs can be singular or plural. Read each sentence. Circle the verb that agrees with the subject.

1. The boys (run, runs) around the track every day.
2. Mr. Martin (work, works) at the clothing factory.
3. The team (travel, travels) to the state tournament each fall.
4. Jamie (play, plays) ball on one of the city soccer teams.
5. My dog (wait, waits) for me every day after school.
6. Everyone (try, tries) to win the spelling bee.
7. My neighbors (enjoy, enjoys) cooking outside on their grill.
8. Our principal (tell, tells) stories to different classes each Friday.
9. My grandma (write, writes) to me every two weeks.
10. Our teacher (sit, sits) in a chair when she reads to us.
11. Nick and Lucia (like, likes) to play checkers.
12. Mrs. Cooper (leave, leaves) on the last flight tonight.



You're doing a super job learning about subject and verb agreement. Let's practice some more!

Read each sentence and underline the subject. Then, choose the correct verb in parentheses to make the subject and verb agree.

1. My best friend (go, went, gone) to the dentist to get a filling.
2. After school, Mary (ran, run) to the gym.
3. Many people (come, came) to the neighborhood meeting last night.
4. The pilot (fly, flies, flew) the people to the island yesterday.
5. Dalia (write, writes, wrote) an excellent report about earthquakes.
6. The audience (sit, sits, sat) quietly while waiting for the movie to begin.
7. Stephanie (like, likes, liked) to dance to this band.
8. The smells from the bakery every morning (make, made) me hungry!
9. My dad (drive, drives, drove) a delivery truck at work each day.
10. Salvatore (like, likes, will like) going to the lake this weekend.
11. I (will travel, traveled, will travels) to Florida next summer.
12. We (sell, sells, sold) our house and moved to another state.

# DO YOU AGREE?

Subjects and verbs have to agree with each other. Read each sentence and underline the subject. Then, rewrite the verb in parentheses to make the subject and verb agree.

1. The spider \_\_\_\_\_ a web in the corner. (spin)
2. During the ice storm, we \_\_\_\_\_ home slowly. (drive)
3. The mail carrier \_\_\_\_\_ the package up the steps. (carry)
4. Thomas \_\_\_\_\_ a letter to his grandma. (write)
5. Maria \_\_\_\_\_ Kyle at a party this winter. (meet)
6. Masao \_\_\_\_\_ a red shirt to school. (wear)
7. James and Terrance \_\_\_\_\_ going to the store for me. (is)
8. The ladies \_\_\_\_\_ playing a game of cards. (was)
9. Mom \_\_\_\_\_ we need to get busy and do our homework. (say)
10. Colin's parents \_\_\_\_\_ waiting in the lobby. (is)
11. We \_\_\_\_\_ just a few minutes to get ready. (has)
12. Rebekah \_\_\_\_\_ the flute in the school band. (play)

# MAKING ASSOCIATIONS

Have you ever noticed that some words seem to go together, like *bread* and *butter*? Read the words on the left. Then, choose the word on the right that goes with the phrase to make it complete.

1. salt and \_\_\_\_\_
2. fork and \_\_\_\_\_
3. shoes and \_\_\_\_\_
4. comb and \_\_\_\_\_
5. soap and \_\_\_\_\_
6. soup and \_\_\_\_\_
7. fruits and \_\_\_\_\_
8. king and \_\_\_\_\_
9. peanut butter and \_\_\_\_\_
10. pencil and \_\_\_\_\_
11. addition and \_\_\_\_\_
12. cats and \_\_\_\_\_

knife  
brush  
jelly  
paper  
subtraction  
dogs  
water  
queen  
crackers  
socks  
pepper  
vegetables



Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Make A Prediction

When we read phrases, sometimes it's easy to predict what the ending will be. Find a word in the column on the right to complete each phrase.

1. a cup of hot \_\_\_\_\_
2. a shelf full of \_\_\_\_\_
3. a wallet full of \_\_\_\_\_
4. a bouquet of \_\_\_\_\_
5. a squirrel with a \_\_\_\_\_
6. a bunch of \_\_\_\_\_
7. a playground with \_\_\_\_\_
8. a carton of \_\_\_\_\_

books

tea

eggs

money

nut

swings

flowers

grapes

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Sit Up and Think!

Sit up and think! Choose a word from the list to complete each phrase.

go  
crackers

pepper  
nail

thread  
right

- |                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a hammer and a _____ | 4. needle and _____ |
| 2. stop and _____       | 5. soup and _____   |
| 3. salt and _____       | 6. left and _____   |

Read the beginning of each phrase below. Think of a word that will complete it. Write your word in the blank.

7. bacon and \_\_\_\_\_
8. knife and \_\_\_\_\_
9. in and \_\_\_\_\_
10. up and \_\_\_\_\_
11. right and \_\_\_\_\_
12. day and \_\_\_\_\_
13. left and \_\_\_\_\_
14. exit and \_\_\_\_\_
15. on and \_\_\_\_\_
16. plus and \_\_\_\_\_
17. true and \_\_\_\_\_
18. top and \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# We Go Together

Sometimes we can read a phrase and know which word will come next. This is called making an *association*. Read these phrases. Then, write the word you associate with each phrase in the blank.

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. a city with tall _____   | 10. a mouthful of _____        |
| 2. a lake full of _____     | 11. a cup of hot _____         |
| 3. a nest in a _____        | 12. a bolt of _____            |
| 4. a carpenter with a _____ | 13. a glass of cold _____      |
| 5. a barber using _____     | 14. a stamp on an _____        |
| 6. a suitcase full of _____ | 15. a garden of _____          |
| 7. pages in a _____         | 16. a player on the _____      |
| 8. sheets and _____         | 17. a piggy bank full of _____ |
| 9. a carton of _____        | 18. a photo album with _____   |

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Stop and listen to all the noises you hear around you. Read each phrase. Match each phrase with a sound word from the box. The first one is done for you.

- |                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. the <u>  buzz  </u> of a bee | 10. the _____ of the horn   |
| 2. the _____ of children        | 11. the _____ of the motor  |
| 3. the _____ of the doorbell    | 12. the _____ of the flag   |
| 4. the _____ of the ambulance   | 13. the _____ of the pig    |
| 5. the _____ of the puppy       | 14. the _____ of the cat    |
| 6. the _____ of the clock       | 15. the _____ of the washer |
| 7. the _____ at the door        | 16. the _____ of the shower |
| 8. the _____ of the duck        | 17. the _____ of the faucet |
| 9. the _____ of the keyboard    | 18. the _____ of the horse  |

knock  
drip  
hum

clippity-clop  
laughter  
quack

purr  
honk  
ringing

buzz  
tap-tap  
squeal

siren  
flapping  
swish

tick  
bark  
splash

# LEFT to RIGHT

Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with a phrase on the right.

- |                             |                                      |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. The playful puppy _____  | A. made the sky go dark.             |
| 2. The artist _____         | B. visited the space center.         |
| 3. The Earth _____          | C. broke when I fell.                |
| 4. The police officer _____ | D. had torn pages.                   |
| 5. My arm _____             | E. painted a country scene.          |
| 6. Jamal's truck _____      | F. was at the scene of the accident. |
| 7. The eclipse _____        | G. played with the ball.             |
| 8. My class _____           | H. rotates on its axis.              |
| 9. The TV _____             | I. was stuck in the mud.             |
| 10. The book _____          | J. was left on all night.            |

# MATCH 'EM UP!

Match the ending of each sentence on the right to the beginning of each sentence on the left.

- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. The swift birds _____ | A. begged for a treat.    |
| 2. Several people _____  | B. moved with grace.      |
| 3. My hungry aunt _____  | C. flew into the tree.    |
| 4. These shoes _____     | D. cooked dinner.         |
| 5. The puppy _____       | E. entered the room.      |
| 6. Mr. Witte _____       | F. twinkled in the sky.   |
| 7. The wet paint _____   | G. cleaned the floor.     |
| 8. The dancer _____      | H. bowed to the audience. |
| 9. The actors _____      | I. spattered on the wall. |
| 10. Many stars _____     | J. hurt my feet.          |

# All mixed up

These sentences are all mixed up! Read each subject on the left. Then, find the verb phrase on the right that matches, and write the correct letter in the blank. When you're finished, write the new sentences on another sheet of paper.

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1. The fire fighter _____  | A. slowly went into its shell.               |
| 2. My stepmother _____     | B. drove me to the library.                  |
| 3. The little kitten _____ | C. delivered a package to us.                |
| 4. The zookeeper _____     | D. moved to another city.                    |
| 5. My best friend _____    | E. fed the animals before she left.          |
| 6. The turtle _____        | F. made the morning announcements at school. |
| 7. A scientist _____       | G. played with the ball of yarn.             |
| 8. The mail carrier _____  | H. raced to the scene of the blaze.          |
| 9. The principal _____     | I. talked to our class about electricity.    |
| 10. The fans _____         | J. cheered the team to victory.              |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Whodunit?

These sentences don't make sense! Figure out "whodunit!" Read the sentences. Match the subject to the verb phrase. The first one is done for you.

- |                      |                       |                           |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. The rodeo rider   | <u>rode the horse</u> | repaired our car          |
| 2. The cook          | _____.                | rode the horse            |
| 3. The teacher       | _____.                | buried the acorns         |
| 4. The pencil lead   | _____.                | took our picture          |
| 5. The mechanic      | _____.                | stopped for passengers    |
| 6. The truck driver  | _____.                | prepared the food         |
| 7. The carpenter     | _____.                | broke off                 |
| 8. The squirrel      | _____.                | read us a story           |
| 9. The bus driver    | _____.                | led us through the museum |
| 10. The photographer | _____.                | drove the semi            |
| 11. The tour guide   | _____.                | hammered loudly           |
| 12. The President    | _____.                | gave a speech on TV       |



Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Connect the words

Connect the words and phrases below to form sentences that make sense. Write each new sentence in the chart.

Who	Action	What

A house painter

stopped

a coat to the man.

The florist

sold

my throat.

The delivery person

painted

the flowers in a vase.

The store clerk

checked

at the corner.

The doctor

put

the house blue.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# BUILD A SENTENCE

Build your own sentences by filling in the chart using the words and phrases from the bottom of the page.

Who	Action	What	Where

The pilot	flew	the nail	on the roof.
Jeremy	rode	a roast	to New York.
The hairdresser	baked	my hair	in her shop.
The carpenter	cut	a plane	in the kitchen.
Aunt Pilar	hammered	the horse	through the field.

# WORD HUNT

Get ready to go on a word hunt! Read each incomplete sentence. Hunt for a verb to put in the blank to make the sentence complete.

Example: She \_\_\_\_\_ a story about the dinosaurs.  
She wrote a story about the dinosaurs.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ to the football game on Saturday.
2. The carpenter \_\_\_\_\_ the nail into the board.
3. Our neighbors \_\_\_\_\_ us a potted plant from their greenhouse.
4. The actors \_\_\_\_\_ a bow after the performance.
5. The artist \_\_\_\_\_ a portrait of the man as he sat on the bench.
6. The travelers \_\_\_\_\_ at the station for the bus to arrive.
7. Mr. Thames \_\_\_\_\_ a car in the contest.
8. The zookeeper \_\_\_\_\_ the animals their meals for the day.
9. The contestant \_\_\_\_\_ the questions right and won the game.
10. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ the national parks each year.
11. Our teacher \_\_\_\_\_ us a story about space travel.
12. The forest ranger \_\_\_\_\_ the area for forest fires.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Finish Line

Finish these sentences by adding a noun that fits.

1. Wendy found a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. We saw a \_\_\_\_\_.
3. They visited a \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I took my \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Mara caught the \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Mom wrote a \_\_\_\_\_.
7. We climbed the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Don laid on the \_\_\_\_\_.
9. She held the \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The students played \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Dad drove his \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Art mowed the \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Tia snapped the \_\_\_\_\_.
14. I lost my \_\_\_\_\_.
15. Kal dropped the \_\_\_\_\_.
16. We drove to the \_\_\_\_\_.
17. He drank his \_\_\_\_\_.
18. The dog chewed the \_\_\_\_\_.
19. I heard a \_\_\_\_\_.
20. Ming went to the \_\_\_\_\_.
21. The bird flew to the \_\_\_\_\_.
22. Tanya licked the \_\_\_\_\_.
23. Mrs. Gipp measured the \_\_\_\_\_.
24. He pushed his \_\_\_\_\_.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Can You Imagine?

Use your imagination to finish each sentence with a noun that fits.

1. I dressed the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. You found your \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I led the \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Maria cooked an \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We played a \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I joined a \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I visited my \_\_\_\_\_.
8. We shopped for \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Kristen played the \_\_\_\_\_.
10. We flew in a \_\_\_\_\_.
11. I wrote a \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Chad washed the \_\_\_\_\_.
13. We jumped the \_\_\_\_\_.
14. I fed the \_\_\_\_\_.
15. They bought a \_\_\_\_\_.
16. Desiree sang a \_\_\_\_\_.
17. Tevin mowed the \_\_\_\_\_.
18. She ate the \_\_\_\_\_.
19. Jake raked the \_\_\_\_\_.
20. We named our \_\_\_\_\_.
21. She froze the \_\_\_\_\_.
22. Ray rode his \_\_\_\_\_.
23. We walked to the \_\_\_\_\_.
24. They saw a \_\_\_\_\_.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# FIND A NOUN

Each of these sentences is missing a noun. Finish each sentence by writing a noun that makes sense in the blank.

1. To bake a cake, you have to turn on the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. When you wash your hair, you need \_\_\_\_\_.
3. When you wash your hands, you should use \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If you want to listen to music, you must turn on the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. To unlock a door, you use a \_\_\_\_\_.
6. When you eat yogurt, you need a \_\_\_\_\_.
7. When you read a book, you have to turn the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. To follow a recipe correctly, you have to add the right \_\_\_\_\_.
9. To use a camera, you need \_\_\_\_\_.
10. If it's raining, you might need to use an \_\_\_\_\_.
11. To put a nail in a board, you use a \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Before mailing a letter, put a \_\_\_\_\_ on the envelope.

# WORD FINDING FUN

Read each sentence below. Think about what each sentence is trying to say. Write a word that makes sense in the blank.

1. After you eat, you should \_\_\_\_\_ your teeth.
2. When you shop in a grocery store, you might \_\_\_\_\_ a cart.
3. When you catch a fish, you \_\_\_\_\_ the fish off the hook.
4. If you put spoons, forks, and knives on the table, you \_\_\_\_\_ the table.
5. When you use the dictionary, you look up a \_\_\_\_\_.
6. When you walk, you \_\_\_\_\_ your feet.
7. When you are up to bat in baseball, you try to \_\_\_\_\_ the ball.
8. To plant flowers, you need some \_\_\_\_\_.
9. When you take a shower, you \_\_\_\_\_ your body.
10. To drive a car, you need a \_\_\_\_\_.
11. When you go to sleep, you \_\_\_\_\_ your eyes.
12. If you are a ballerina, you like to \_\_\_\_\_.

# What A Puzzle!

Find the way these words go together. Put the words in each set into a sentence that makes sense.

1. like I you .

\_\_\_\_\_

2. down fell Lucas .

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Go outside play .

\_\_\_\_\_

4. room Clean your .

\_\_\_\_\_

5. The barked dog .

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Did call you ?

\_\_\_\_\_

7. That funny is .

\_\_\_\_\_

8. play Can you ?

\_\_\_\_\_

9. see my I friend .

\_\_\_\_\_

10. Gina tree climbed the .

\_\_\_\_\_

11. book Jacob his read .

\_\_\_\_\_

12. Toya boat rode a .

\_\_\_\_\_



# What Did You Say ?

These scrambled sentences are very confusing. Rewrite each sentence so it makes sense.

1. mail carrier a delivered The letter .

---

2. carried The baby nurse the .

---

3. haircut Andre a got .

---

4. help Who me can ?

---

5. stepmom My shopping went .

---

6. cancelled School today was .

---

7. grandmother pie a baked My .

---

8. to listen Dylan to likes music .

---

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Mix - Up

Read each of these mixed-up sentences. Then, rewrite the sentences so they make sense.

1. pizza Put table the on the .

\_\_\_\_\_

2. kittens The played yarn the with .

\_\_\_\_\_

3. ride can Gabe us with .

\_\_\_\_\_

4. forget wash Don't hands to your .

\_\_\_\_\_

5. you puzzle Will me help work this ?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. friends My scared snake are pet of my .

\_\_\_\_\_

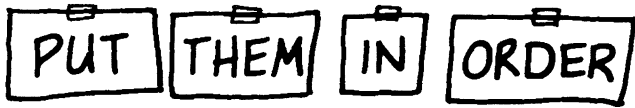
7. spent arcade afternoon the the Meiko at .

\_\_\_\_\_

8. kitchen the Wayne his mother cleaned for .

\_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_



These sentences don't make sense! Put the words in the correct order. Remember, the first word of each sentence is capitalized.

1. rode down the Marlon trail bike his .

\_\_\_\_\_

2. where Do know you Sherrie lives ?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. snow window looked We out falling and the saw .

\_\_\_\_\_

4. hard school Irene worked on project her .

\_\_\_\_\_

5. famous a book about read Jordan a explorer .

\_\_\_\_\_

6. dream scary last Charlie a night had .

\_\_\_\_\_

7. tried to Doug dog train his .

\_\_\_\_\_

8. soccer We today class gym in played .

\_\_\_\_\_

# SCRAMBLED SENTENCES

Read each scrambled sentence. Use your best “unscrambling” skills, and rewrite each sentence so it makes sense.

1. bread Grandma baked night last .

---

2. counted in fifteen Brian people the room .

---

3. baby to toy crawled The get his .

---

4. Tomas radio listened after to supper the .

---

5. park We at on picnic went a the .

---

6. nibbled The carrot rabbit the on .

---

7. moved books the Valerie off table the .

---

8. day The slept cat the chair on all .

---

# Order! order!

These sentences are out of order. Read each sentence. Then, change the word order so the sentences make sense.

1. friend letter Lisa wrote a her .

---

2. street My down dog the ran .

---

3. jump Devin rope likes to .

---

4. Mia to Can come me visit ?

---

5. feels Trey happy very today .

---

6. Renee basket winning the made .

---

7. homework Will my help you me with ?

---

8. 911 called he fire the saw when Raymond .

---

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Confusing Questions

Someone mixed up these questions. Now they're really confusing! Read each question and put the words in order. (Remember — the first word of the sentence begins with a capital letter.)

1. Erik run Did see you ?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. going aren't me with Why you ?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. fun you having party Are at the ?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. aunt When coming your is ?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. coat you put Where your did ?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. friend know you Do my ?

\_\_\_\_\_

7. like the Did you story ?

\_\_\_\_\_

8. coat my you brown Have seen ?

\_\_\_\_\_

# MAKE the SWITCH

These questions are all mixed up! Read each question and put the words in order.

1. on street What does live Kathy ?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. apartment Is near Sam's school ?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. going When go to are bed you to ?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. will Who play be in the ?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Will us you ball with play ?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. movie going you are to What ?

\_\_\_\_\_

7. have Can please yogurt we some ?

\_\_\_\_\_

8. drop floor the on Did the Jeff glass ?

\_\_\_\_\_

# Plural Info

When something is plural, it means more than one. There are a lot of rules to remember when making words plural.

- add an *s* to most nouns  
**shoe — shoes, sock — socks**
- for nouns ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, *sh*, and *ch*, add *-es*  
**box — boxes, brush — brushes**
- for nouns ending in a *vowel* plus a *y*, add *-s*  
**toy — toys, key — keys**
- for nouns ending in a *consonant* plus *y*, change the *y* to *i* and add *-es*  
**fairy — fairies, penny — pennies**
- for some nouns ending in *f* or *fe*, change the *f* or *fe* to *v* and add *-es*  
**elf — elves, life — lives**

To make some nouns plural, you have to memorize the plural because there are no rules to follow. They don't fit any pattern. Each word is different.

**tooth — teeth**  
**mouse — mice**

Make each noun plural by adding *-s* or *-es*. The rules will help you.

1. mitten \_\_\_\_\_  
2. crutch \_\_\_\_\_  
3. leaf \_\_\_\_\_  
4. day \_\_\_\_\_

5. coat \_\_\_\_\_  
6. box \_\_\_\_\_  
7. berry \_\_\_\_\_  
8. buzz \_\_\_\_\_



# What's The Difference?

What's the difference between singular and plural? When something is *singular*, it means one of something. When something is *plural*, it means more than one.

Read each word. If it's singular, color the circle yellow. If it's plural, color the circle blue.

dishes

halls

bushes

pencils

pen

rulers

leg

door

dress

holes

spoons

door

school

clock

# Look Carefully

The word *singular* means one of something. The word *plural* means more than one. Read each word. If the word is singular, write *S*. If the word is plural, write *P*.

- |                    |                     |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. bikes _____     | 16. stamps _____    | 31. dog _____       |
| 2. apple _____     | 17. door _____      | 32. straw _____     |
| 3. birds _____     | 18. foot _____      | 33. cat _____       |
| 4. computers _____ | 19. broom _____     | 34. houses _____    |
| 5. snails _____    | 20. peach _____     | 35. flower _____    |
| 6. hand _____      | 21. axes _____      | 36. buses _____     |
| 7. crutch _____    | 22. pen _____       | 37. windows _____   |
| 8. shovels _____   | 23. dresser _____   | 38. cup _____       |
| 9. lunches _____   | 24. teams _____     | 39. coffee _____    |
| 10. teacher _____  | 25. game _____      | 40. days _____      |
| 11. napkins _____  | 26. telephone _____ | 41. necklace _____  |
| 12. turkey _____   | 27. trucks _____    | 42. eraser _____    |
| 13. bags _____     | 28. basket _____    | 43. suitcases _____ |
| 14. chickens _____ | 29. shirt _____     | 44. rock _____      |
| 15. shampoo _____  | 30. fingers _____   | 45. prizes _____    |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Which Is Which?

Which word is singular? Which word is plural? Write the words in the correct column. The first one is done for you.

home	truck	shoes	coat	tapes	cage
papers	frog	couch	maps	bridges	oars
plates	arm	fence	ribs	clip	boats
dishes	spoon	sticks	monkey	ships	yard

Singular	Plural
<i>home</i>	

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Follow the Rules

Follow the rules in the box to make these nouns that end in *y* plural. The first one is done for you.

To make a word that ends in a *vowel* plus a *y* plural, add *-s*.

**boy — boys**

To make a word that ends in a *consonant* plus a *y* plural, change the *y* to *i* and add *-es*.

**dairy - dairies**

- |             |             |            |       |
|-------------|-------------|------------|-------|
| 1. boy      | <u>boys</u> | 12. toy    | _____ |
| 2. story    | _____       | 13. copy   | _____ |
| 3. sky      | _____       | 14. baby   | _____ |
| 4. key      | _____       | 15. agency | _____ |
| 5. country  | _____       | 16. monkey | _____ |
| 6. valley   | _____       | 17. puppy  | _____ |
| 7. pansy    | _____       | 18. berry  | _____ |
| 8. tray     | _____       | 19. study  | _____ |
| 9. party    | _____       | 20. fly    | _____ |
| 10. city    | _____       | 21. way    | _____ |
| 11. mystery | _____       | 22. penny  | _____ |

# HERE'S A TIP

Here are some tips on how to make nouns plural. Read the rules and apply them to the words below.

- add an *s* to most nouns
- for nouns ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, *sh*, and *ch*, add *-es*
- for nouns ending in a *vowel* plus a *y*, add *-s*
- for nouns ending in a *consonant* plus *y*, change the *y* to *i* and add *-es*

- |                 |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. berry _____  | 11. alley _____ | 21. ferry _____   |
| 2. peach _____  | 12. fairy _____ | 22. dress _____   |
| 3. pony _____   | 13. flash _____ | 23. match _____   |
| 4. sky _____    | 14. place _____ | 24. lunch _____   |
| 5. ranch _____  | 15. trial _____ | 25. fox _____     |
| 6. rich _____   | 16. patch _____ | 26. rash _____    |
| 7. box _____    | 17. couch _____ | 27. mix _____     |
| 8. dairy _____  | 18. boss _____  | 28. tourist _____ |
| 9. fry _____    | 19. dish _____  | 29. lash _____    |
| 10. prize _____ | 20. brush _____ | 30. latch _____   |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Put It On

Put on your thinking cap and read each word. Make the word plural to complete the phrase.

1. box                      two \_\_\_\_\_ of old clothes
2. table                    the \_\_\_\_\_ in the cafeteria
3. mix                      several cake \_\_\_\_\_
4. couch                    fourteen \_\_\_\_\_
5. dress                    a rack of \_\_\_\_\_
6. fox                      the \_\_\_\_\_ in the forest
7. wish                    three \_\_\_\_\_
8. pinch                    use two \_\_\_\_\_ of salt
9. balloon                    four red \_\_\_\_\_
10. pencil                    broken \_\_\_\_\_
11. lesson                    many \_\_\_\_\_
12. match                    a box of \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# More Practice

Make each word plural.

- |             |       |                |       |
|-------------|-------|----------------|-------|
| 1. pack     | _____ | 12. fox        | _____ |
| 2. dish     | _____ | 13. ranch      | _____ |
| 3. mess     | _____ | 14. maze       | _____ |
| 4. diamond  | _____ | 15. inch       | _____ |
| 5. ditch    | _____ | 16. screen     | _____ |
| 6. tax      | _____ | 17. bus        | _____ |
| 7. shark    | _____ | 18. duck       | _____ |
| 8. stitch   | _____ | 19. dress      | _____ |
| 9. leash    | _____ | 20. rinse      | _____ |
| 10. mailbox | _____ | 21. booklet    | _____ |
| 11. address | _____ | 22. tablecloth | _____ |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Keep Practicing

Keep practicing the rules to make nouns plural. Read each sentence. Make the word in parentheses plural.

1. A long time ago people traveled in \_\_\_\_\_. (buggy)
2. If you listen, you might win two movie \_\_\_\_\_. (pass)
3. The sack \_\_\_\_\_ are in the back of the bus. (lunch)
4. Students must put their \_\_\_\_\_ away after eating. (tray)
5. The baseball team has two \_\_\_\_\_ so far this year. (loss)
6. He had two \_\_\_\_\_ covering the holes in his jeans. (patch)
7. In seven \_\_\_\_\_, we'll be on vacation! (day)
8. Did you find my \_\_\_\_\_ anywhere? (key)
9. I gave both of my sisters \_\_\_\_\_ for their birthdays. (watch)
10. There are two \_\_\_\_\_ in this room. (fly)
11. Mr. Rockland bought a box of \_\_\_\_\_ for the camping trip. (match)
12. We saw three \_\_\_\_\_ when we were in the city. (play)



# Practice Makes Perfect

Think about the rules to make nouns plural. Read each sentence. Make the word in parentheses plural.

1. Please plant these two \_\_\_\_\_. (bush)
2. The baseball player made many great \_\_\_\_\_ last year. (catch)
3. People have to pay their \_\_\_\_\_ by April 15th each year. (tax)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ often have cattle grazing in the fields. (Ranch)
5. We picked \_\_\_\_\_ in the orchard. (berry)
6. It would be hard work to dig \_\_\_\_\_. (ditch)
7. The fairy granted three \_\_\_\_\_. (wish)
8. We'll need several \_\_\_\_\_ to cut down these trees. (axe)
9. The city ordered new \_\_\_\_\_ for the park. (bench)
10. The \_\_\_\_\_ cross the lake every day. (ferry)
11. There were two kinds of \_\_\_\_\_ at the zoo. (fox)
12. Please dry the \_\_\_\_\_. (dish)

# More Than One

Read each word. Change each noun to a plural. Then, use each word in a sentence.

Example: **box** — **boxes** I put the presents in several **boxes** to mail.

1. crutch \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. mix \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. calendar \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. baby \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5. fox \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

6. scratch \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

7. daisy \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

8. hat \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

# NO RULES

When you make some nouns plural, there are no rules to follow. They don't fit any pattern. You have to memorize the plural for each word because they're all different.

Read each sentence. Complete each sentence using the plural form of the word in parentheses.

1. I saw three \_\_\_\_\_ run across the barn floor. (mouse)
2. The dentist had to fill two \_\_\_\_\_ on my last visit. (tooth)
3. Many \_\_\_\_\_ walked in the parade on Saturday. (woman)
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ were flying south for the winter. (goose)
5. All of the \_\_\_\_\_ went to the gym. (child)
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ worked to build the new bank. (man)
7. We were excited to see all of the \_\_\_\_\_ on the farm. (sheep)
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ grazed at the edge of the forest. (deer)
9. The new shoes made my \_\_\_\_\_ hurt. (foot)
10. We saw a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ at the aquarium. (jellyfish)

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Which One?

Read each set of words. Underline the word that is the plural of the word in bold.

- |                  |          |          |         |
|------------------|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. <b>hoof</b>   | hoofs    | hooves   | holfves |
| 2. <b>shelf</b>  | shelfs   | shelfes  | shelves |
| 3. <b>man</b>    | men      | mans     | man     |
| 4. <b>child</b>  | children | childies | childs  |
| 5. <b>tooth</b>  | tooths   | teethies | teeth   |
| 6. <b>ox</b>     | oxes     | oxen     | oxies   |
| 7. <b>leaf</b>   | leaves   | leafs    | leafies |
| 8. <b>calf</b>   | calfs    | calves   | calfes  |
| 9. <b>fish</b>   | fishes   | fishs    | fish    |
| 10. <b>foot</b>  | feet     | footes   | foots   |
| 11. <b>mouse</b> | mousies  | mouses   | mice    |
| 12. <b>life</b>  | lifes    | lives    | lifies  |
| 13. <b>elf</b>   | elves    | elfs     | elfies  |
| 14. <b>goose</b> | geese    | goosies  | gooses  |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# CROSSWORD *fun*

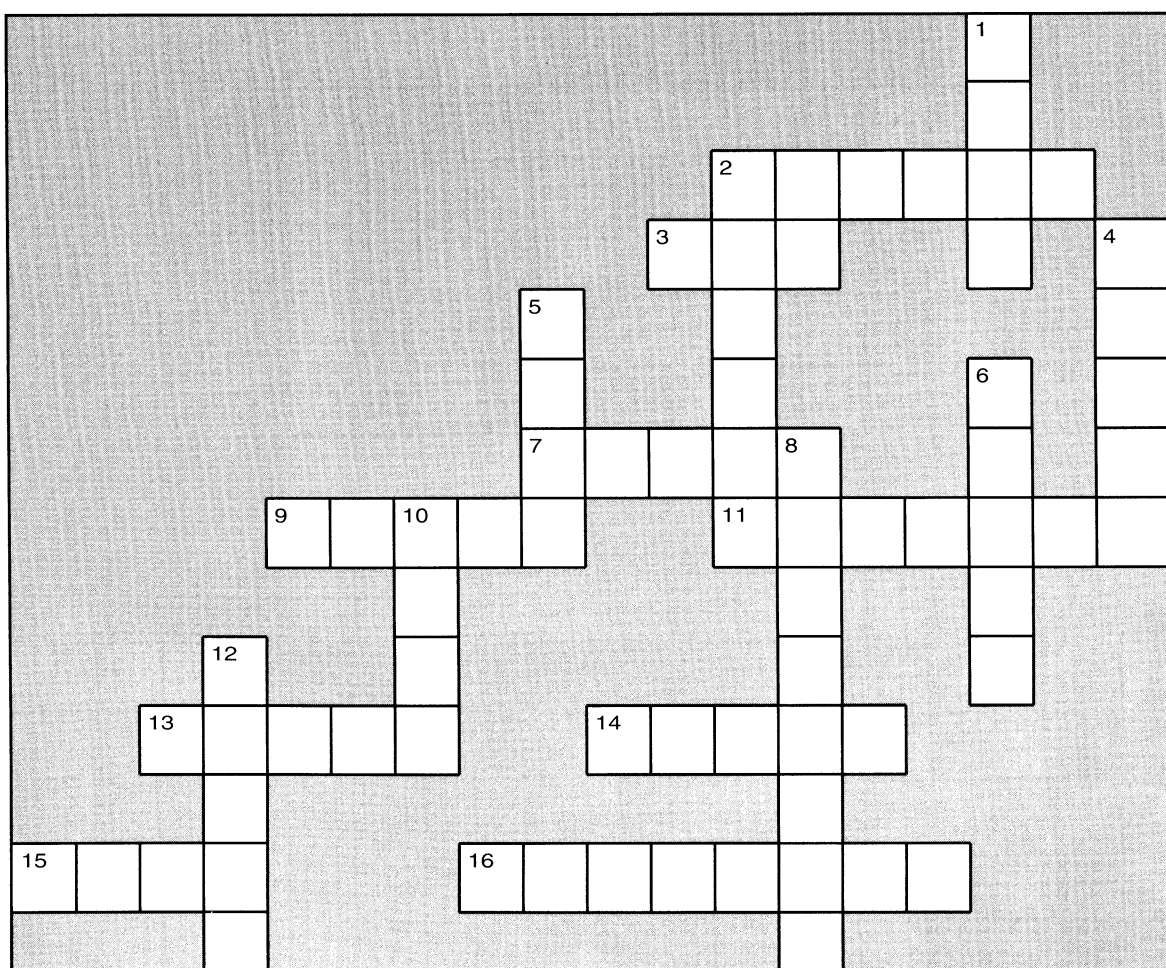
Read each word. Make the word plural to complete the puzzle.

## Across

2. loaf
3. man
7. elf
9. woman
11. scarf
13. goose
14. moose
15. foot
16. child

## Down

1. deer
2. leaf
4. life
5. ox
6. wife
8. scissors
10. mouse
12. tooth



Name \_\_\_\_\_

# more CROSSWORD fun

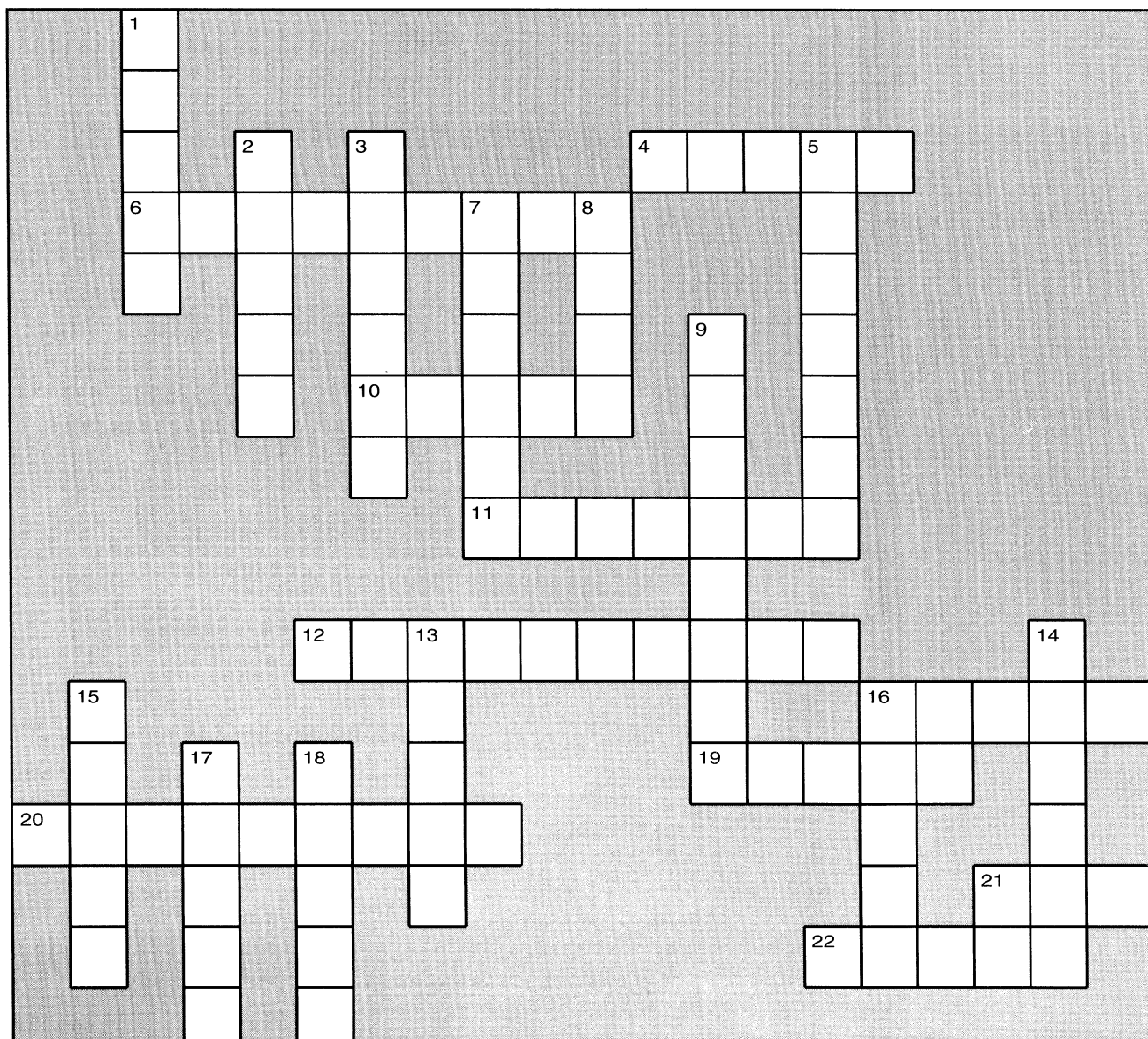
Here's another crossword puzzle for you to practice writing plurals. Read each word. Make the word plural to complete the puzzle.

## Across

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 4. trap       | 16. tax     |
| 6. eyelash    | 19. sky     |
| 10. elf       | 20. library |
| 11. study     | 21. man     |
| 12. cafeteria | 22. shoe    |

## Down

- |          |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. box   | 8. sea    | 15. fly   |
| 2. goose | 9. cavity | 16. tooth |
| 3. lash  | 13. fox   | 17. try   |
| 5. penny | 14. leaf  | 18. fry   |
| 7. hoof  |           |           |



# Adjectives

*Adjectives* are words that are used to describe nouns and pronouns. An adjective tells you more about, or *modifies* the noun or pronoun. Most of the time, adjectives are placed just before the nouns they describe.

the **rickety, old** chair  
the **dusty** trunk  
the **tiny** bird

Adjectives tell:

*what kind* of thing is being described

the **red** truck  
the **sweet** baby

*how many* or *how much*

**several** people  
**two** boys

*which one*

**that** book  
**this** teacher

Adjectives can also compare two or more things, people, or places.

- When an adjective is used to compare two things, add *-er* to the base word.  
He is **bigger** than I am.
- When an adjective is used to compare more than two things, add *-est* to the base word.  
He is the **biggest** boy in our class.
- If a word ends in *y*, change the *y* to an *i* before adding *-er* or *-est*.  
(silly) That book is much **sillier** than the others.  
(funny) Max is the **funniest** kid in his class.

How many adjectives can you list to describe your classroom?

---



---

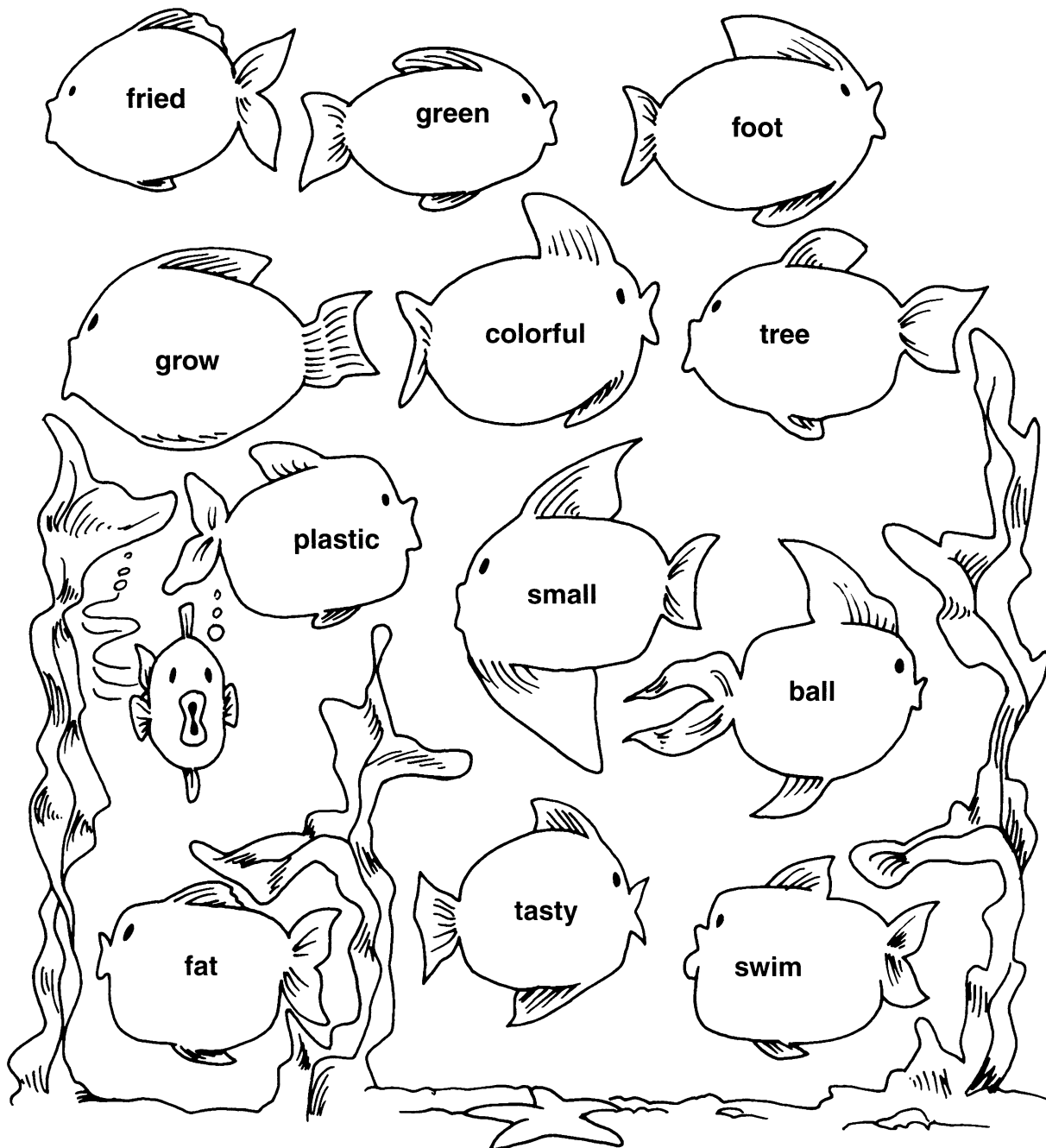


---

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Let's Go Fishing

Let's go fishing! Color each adjective that can describe a fish. To help you decide whether a word is an adjective, put the word in the phrase, "a \_\_\_\_\_ fish." Does the word tell you about the fish? If so, then it's an adjective.



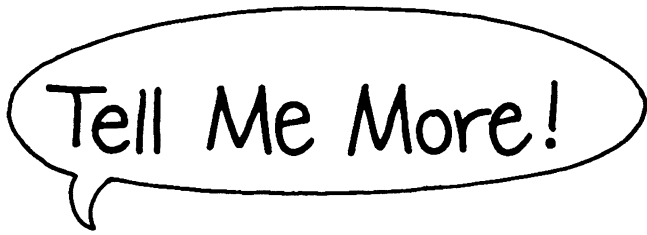


# Be **BOLD**

Read each word in bold. Circle the adjective that best describes it.

- |                     |         |          |         |
|---------------------|---------|----------|---------|
| 1. <b>clown</b>     | poor    | slow     | funny   |
| 2. <b>ice cream</b> | tasty   | colorful | simple  |
| 3. <b>tire</b>      | flat    | round    | fast    |
| 4. <b>paper</b>     | heavy   | flat     | pointed |
| 5. <b>snowflake</b> | light   | round    | greasy  |
| 6. <b>tower</b>     | tall    | wide     | smelly  |
| 7. <b>hero</b>      | slow    | colorful | brave   |
| 8. <b>boulder</b>   | rolling | round    | big     |
| 9. <b>castle</b>    | huge    | wooden   | bright  |
| 10. <b>flower</b>   | tasty   | large    | pretty  |
| 11. <b>fish</b>     | scaly   | warm     | green   |
| 12. <b>bottle</b>   | glass   | mine     | dirty   |
| 13. <b>sandwich</b> | lunch   | cheese   | tasty   |
| 14. <b>tissue</b>   | sound   | box      | soft    |

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Tell me more about these words! Describe each word in bold by choosing two adjectives that could best describe it.

- |     |               |          |          |             |       |
|-----|---------------|----------|----------|-------------|-------|
| 1.  | <b>tomato</b> | tasty    | red      | ugly        | low   |
| 2.  | <b>mouse</b>  | blue     | small    | cheese      | fast  |
| 3.  | <b>cement</b> | heavy    | red      | shiny       | hard  |
| 4.  | <b>table</b>  | recent   | chair    | sturdy      | low   |
| 5.  | <b>baby</b>   | young    | small    | bottle      | mean  |
| 6.  | <b>music</b>  | rock     | hot      | round       | soft  |
| 7.  | <b>bed</b>    | sheets   | cover    | comfortable | large |
| 8.  | <b>forest</b> | dense    | animal   | cool        | tree  |
| 9.  | <b>city</b>   | house    | traffic  | busy        | noisy |
| 10. | <b>iron</b>   | wrinkles | electric | hot         | dress |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Take Notice

Take notice! Read the word in bold. Then, circle the two adjectives that could best describe it.

- |                     |          |            |           |
|---------------------|----------|------------|-----------|
| 1. <b>dog</b>       | simple   | furry      | black     |
| 2. <b>fish</b>      | soft     | scaly      | green     |
| 3. <b>grass</b>     | green    | growing    | tasty     |
| 4. <b>song</b>      | cheerful | messy      | long      |
| 5. <b>room</b>      | large    | silly      | carpeted  |
| 6. <b>nail</b>      | sharp    | pointed    | plain     |
| 7. <b>carrot</b>    | orange   | crunchy    | sour      |
| 8. <b>box</b>       | oily     | square     | cardboard |
| 9. <b>telephone</b> | slow     | ringing    | broken    |
| 10. <b>candy</b>    | tasty    | wet        | sweet     |
| 11. <b>sun</b>      | sky      | bright     | shining   |
| 12. <b>mirror</b>   | smooth   | reflective | magic     |

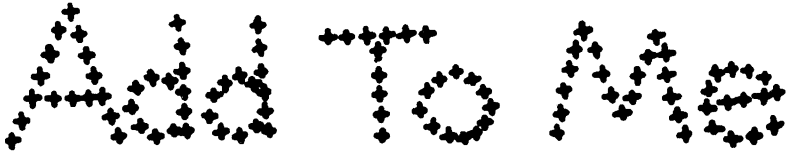
# THE SEARCH IS ON



Be an adjective detective! Search for the adjectives in these sentences. Underline each one.

1. The deserted house sat on a huge hill overlooking the green valley.
2. The barking dog ran after the frightened cat.
3. The two girls sat on the wooden swing as they waited for the late bus.
4. The farmer picked the ripe plums from the tree.
5. The Truman family looked for a new stove at several stores.
6. Mrs. Hart made a chocolate cake for the club's picnic.
7. The quick artist sketched a pencil drawing of the laughing children.
8. The frightened boys ran when they heard the loud blast.
9. The fearless campers floated down the swift river on a raft.
10. Uncle Max braved the stormy weather to get dry wood for the campfire.
11. We studied dinosaurs and saw many interesting bones.
12. Kim enjoyed a healthy snack of crunchy carrots and celery.

Name \_\_\_\_\_



An adjective is a word that describes something. Add three different adjectives to describe each noun.

1. the \_\_\_\_\_ cat

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. this \_\_\_\_\_ song

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. a \_\_\_\_\_ car

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. a \_\_\_\_\_ bottle

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. the \_\_\_\_\_ movie

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. the \_\_\_\_\_ classroom

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. that \_\_\_\_\_ noise

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. a \_\_\_\_\_ snake

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Get Ready

Get your engines ready! You can win this race by adding six adjectives to describe each noun.

song

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

tree

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

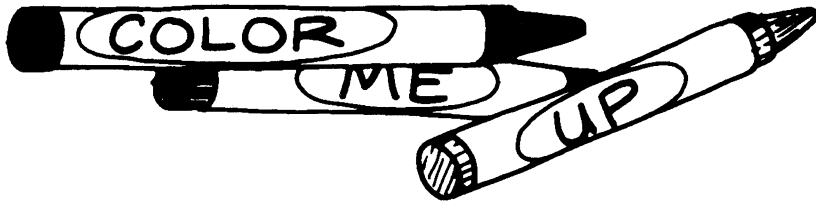
smell

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

weather

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Name \_\_\_\_\_



“Color” these phrases with adjectives. Read each phrase. Then, choose a word from the box that fits each phrase.

1. my \_\_\_\_\_ room
2. a \_\_\_\_\_ kitten
3. the \_\_\_\_\_ clock
4. an \_\_\_\_\_ desert
5. a \_\_\_\_\_ intermission
6. a \_\_\_\_\_ potted plant
7. a \_\_\_\_\_ snake
8. the \_\_\_\_\_ jet
9. the \_\_\_\_\_ shirt
10. a \_\_\_\_\_ towel
11. the \_\_\_\_\_ touchdown
12. a \_\_\_\_\_ recital

brief
swift
winning
messy
hanging
wet
dance
ticking
wrinkled
coiled
playful
arid

Name \_\_\_\_\_



You'll be flying high when you finish this page! Add an adjective to complete each phrase. Choose your adjectives from the box.

1. the \_\_\_\_\_ chicken
2. the \_\_\_\_\_ fox
3. the \_\_\_\_\_ baby
4. the \_\_\_\_\_ deer
5. an \_\_\_\_\_ book
6. the \_\_\_\_\_ chimney
7. my \_\_\_\_\_ room
8. the \_\_\_\_\_ cord
9. a \_\_\_\_\_ crate
10. the \_\_\_\_\_ thunder
11. a \_\_\_\_\_ mop
12. the \_\_\_\_\_ teakettle

steaming  
interesting  
rumbling  
crispy  
soggy  
graceful  
wooden  
smoking  
sly  
messy  
frayed  
crying



# What A Description!

Adjectives are words that describe nouns. Find the best word to describe each noun phrase. The words in the box will help you.

1. a \_\_\_\_\_ day
2. the \_\_\_\_\_ noise
3. some \_\_\_\_\_ flowers
4. the \_\_\_\_\_ steps
5. the \_\_\_\_\_ sunlight
6. a \_\_\_\_\_ baby
7. the \_\_\_\_\_ dog
8. a \_\_\_\_\_ mansion
9. a \_\_\_\_\_ clown
10. a \_\_\_\_\_ kitten
11. the \_\_\_\_\_ lemon
12. a \_\_\_\_\_ nail
13. the \_\_\_\_\_ deer
14. the \_\_\_\_\_ musician
15. the \_\_\_\_\_ snake
16. the \_\_\_\_\_ driver
17. a \_\_\_\_\_ fire
18. the \_\_\_\_\_ thief

slithering

graceful

stormy

sleeping

rusty

creaking

sour

spooky

funny

purring

growling

loud

bright

talented

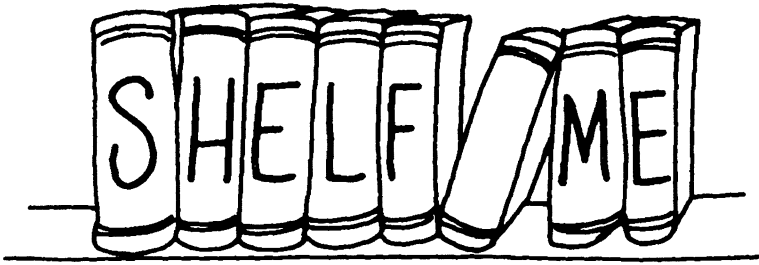
beautiful

careful

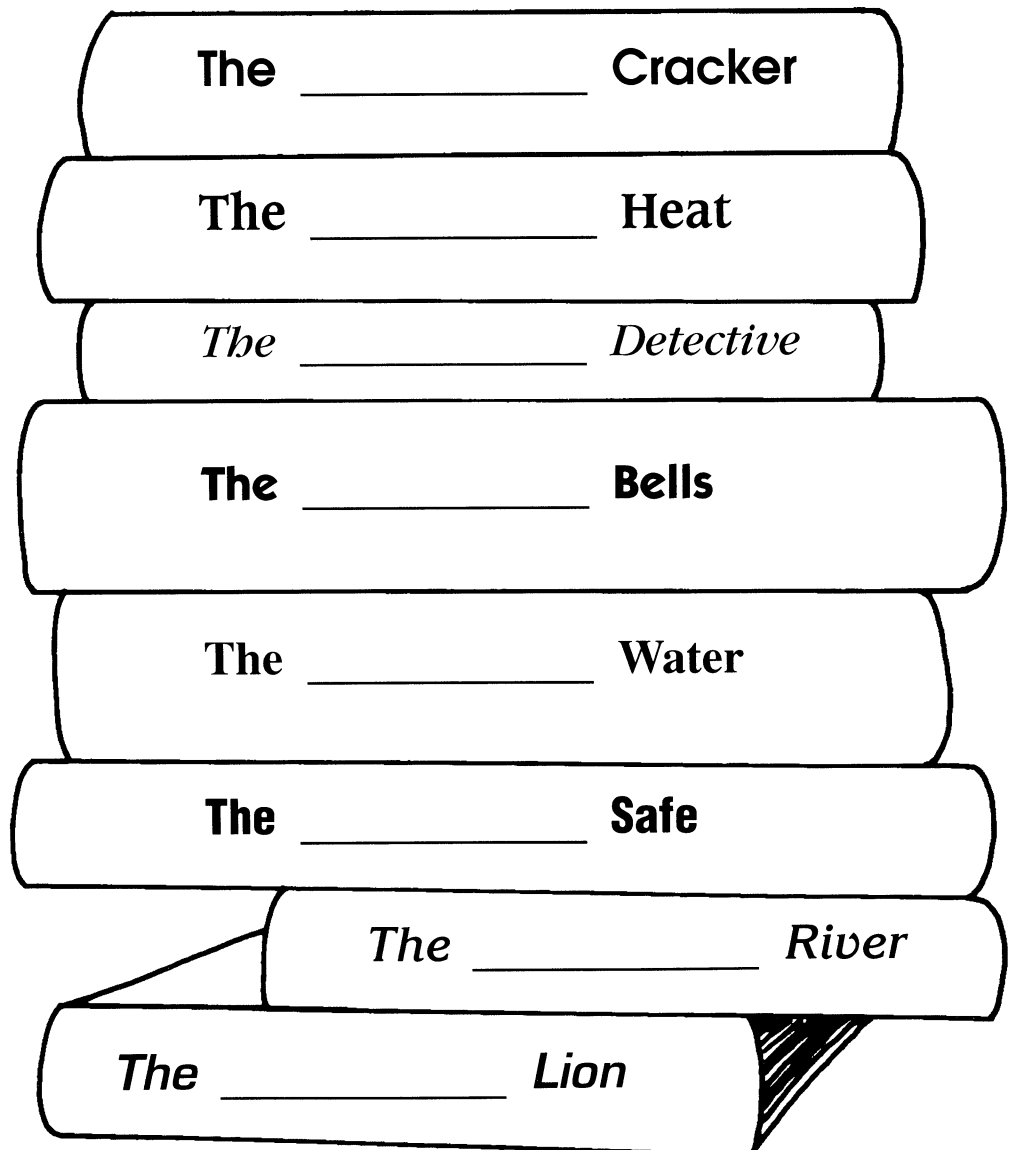
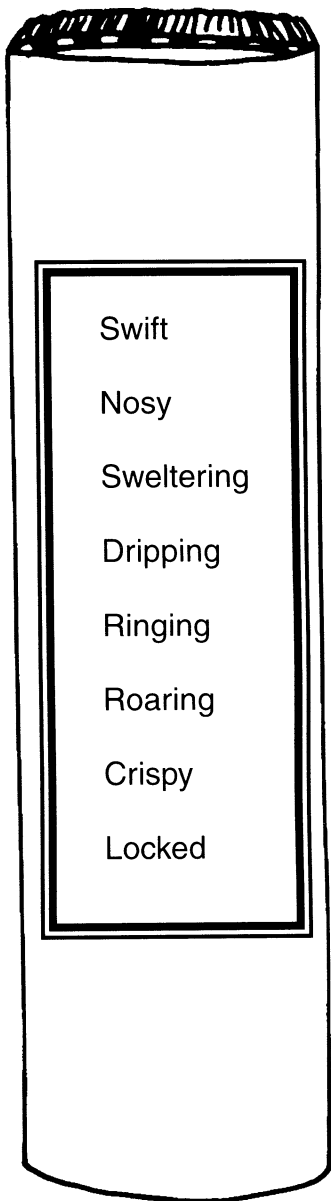
sneaky

blazing

Name \_\_\_\_\_



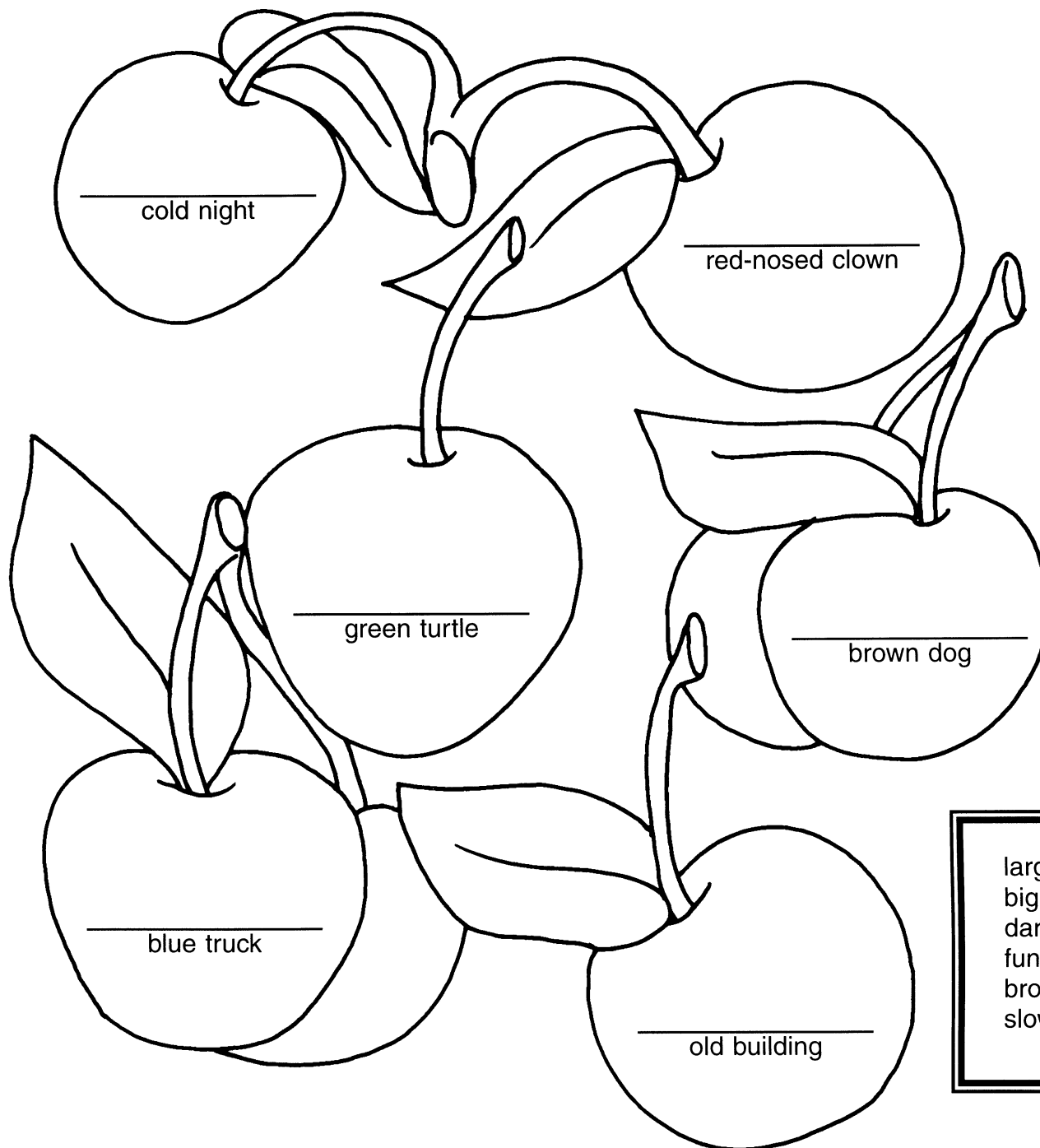
These books aren't on their shelves. The adjective in each title is missing. Choose words from the word list to finish each title.



Name \_\_\_\_\_



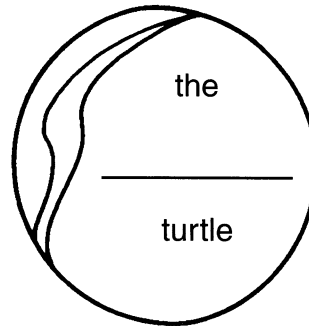
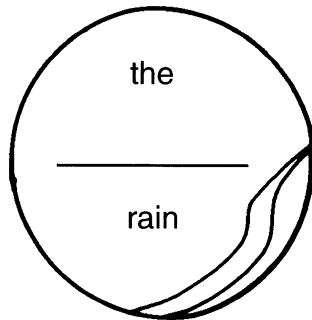
It's cherry picking time! Pick each cherry by adding another adjective to each item.



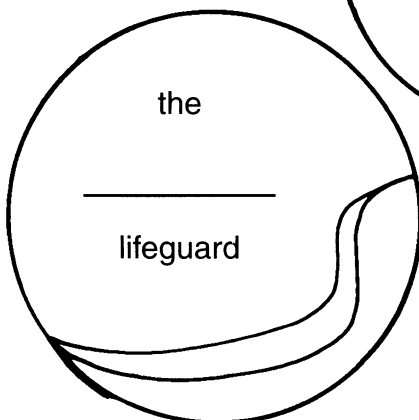
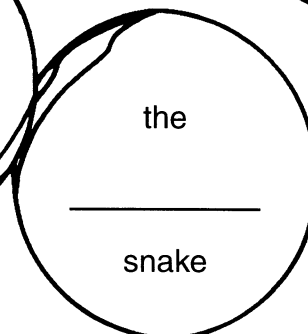
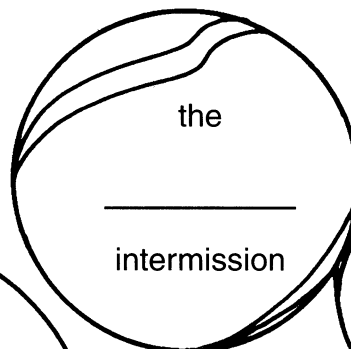
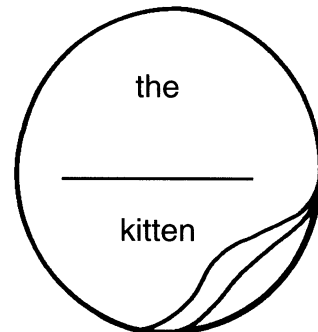
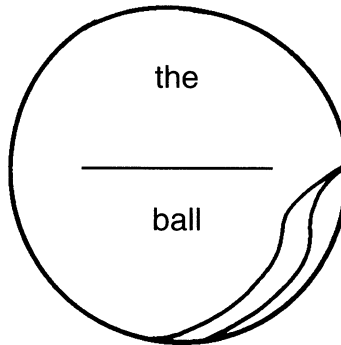
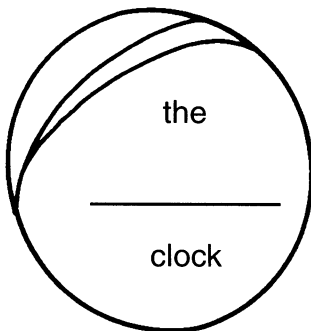
Name \_\_\_\_\_

PLAY ME

Do you like to play marbles? Write a describing word from the word list in each marble.



slow  
watchful  
cold  
coiled  
round  
ticking  
brief  
playful



Name \_\_\_\_\_

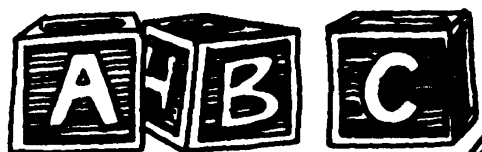


Make my day by adding an adjective to each phrase. Choose adjectives from the word box. Be sure to write a different adjective in each phrase. The first one is done for you.

1. the funny man
2. the \_\_\_\_\_ pencil
3. a \_\_\_\_\_ truck
4. the \_\_\_\_\_ sunshine
5. the \_\_\_\_\_ puzzle
6. the \_\_\_\_\_ puppy
7. a \_\_\_\_\_ story
8. a \_\_\_\_\_ teacher
9. a \_\_\_\_\_ storm
10. the \_\_\_\_\_ pot
11. a \_\_\_\_\_ flower
12. the \_\_\_\_\_ apple
13. the \_\_\_\_\_ weather
14. the \_\_\_\_\_ wagon
15. the \_\_\_\_\_ juice
16. the \_\_\_\_\_ card
17. a \_\_\_\_\_ thumb
18. the \_\_\_\_\_ fire
19. the \_\_\_\_\_ iron
20. the \_\_\_\_\_ lemon

coffee	substitute	tasty	covered	bright
pink	orange	speeding	long	stormy
difficult	birthday	tiny	sour	sore
terrible	steam	✓funny	broken	blazing

Name \_\_\_\_\_



# challenge

Find an adjective for each letter of the alphabet.

A \_\_\_\_\_

B \_\_\_\_\_

C \_\_\_\_\_

D \_\_\_\_\_

E \_\_\_\_\_

F \_\_\_\_\_

G \_\_\_\_\_

H \_\_\_\_\_

I \_\_\_\_\_

J \_\_\_\_\_

K \_\_\_\_\_

L \_\_\_\_\_

M \_\_\_\_\_

N \_\_\_\_\_

O \_\_\_\_\_

P \_\_\_\_\_

Q \_\_\_\_\_

R \_\_\_\_\_

S \_\_\_\_\_

T \_\_\_\_\_

U \_\_\_\_\_

V \_\_\_\_\_

W \_\_\_\_\_

X This one is a freebie!

Y \_\_\_\_\_

Z You're at the end!

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Feelings

Think of all the ways you can feel. Words that describe things, like feelings, are called *adjectives*. Unscramble each word to find a feeling. The word box will help you, but be careful! There are more words in the word box than you need.

- |             |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. OLELYN   | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |       |       |
| 2. PAHPY    | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |       |       |       |
| 3. UOSFENCD | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 4. SURHDE   | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |       |       |
| 5. ZLEPZUD  | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |       |
| 6. RBDEO    | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |       |       |       |
| 7. OTICUASU | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 8. STERDE   | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |       |       |
| 9. XCEDETI  | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |       |
| 10. XIUNOAS | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |       |
| 11. GRANY   | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |       |       |       |
| 12. DEETLA  | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |       |       |

bored  
grateful  
cautious

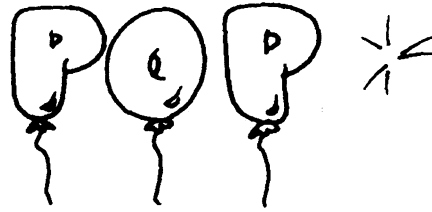
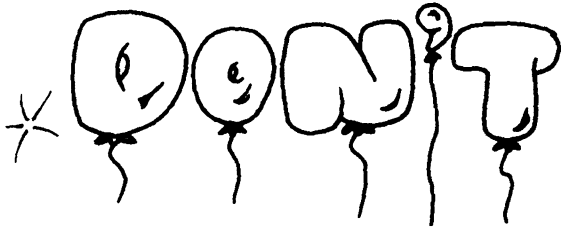
rested  
puzzled  
rushed

angry  
anxious  
hurt

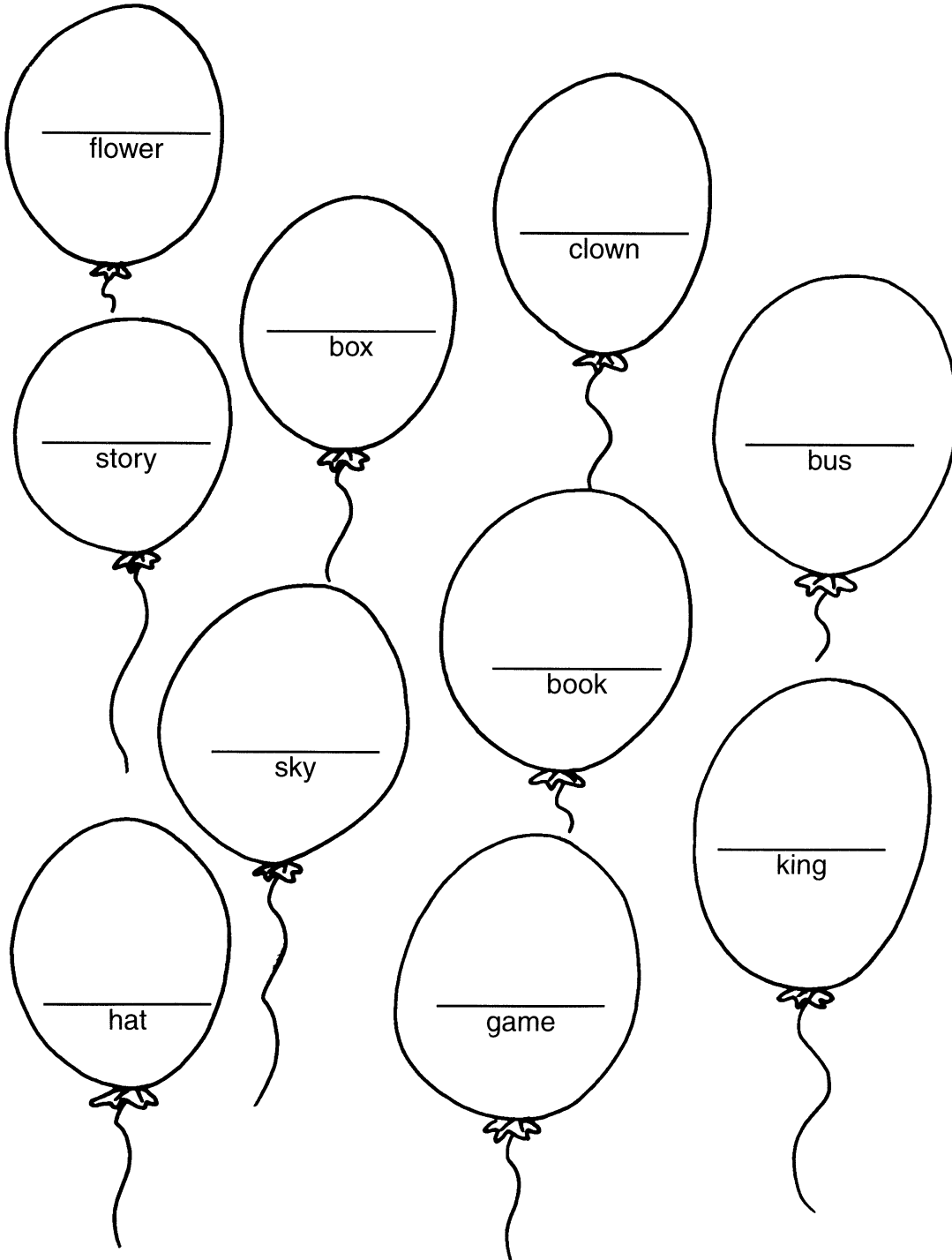
excited  
lonely  
loving

happy  
elated  
confused

Name \_\_\_\_\_

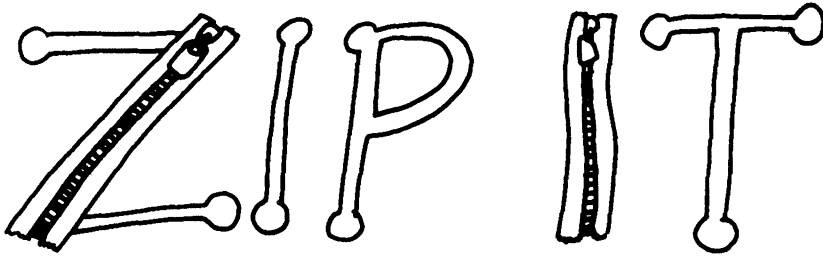


Look at the noun in each balloon. Add an adjective to the noun to make it more interesting.





Name \_\_\_\_\_



Zip into action to complete each phrase. Read each word. Write an adjective to describe it.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ pencil

12. \_\_\_\_\_ truck

2. \_\_\_\_\_ school

13. \_\_\_\_\_ zipper

3. \_\_\_\_\_ kitten

14. \_\_\_\_\_ suitcase

4. \_\_\_\_\_ man

15. \_\_\_\_\_ day

5. \_\_\_\_\_ girl

16. \_\_\_\_\_ song

6. \_\_\_\_\_ trip

17. \_\_\_\_\_ flower

7. \_\_\_\_\_ circle

18. \_\_\_\_\_ book

8. \_\_\_\_\_ pen

19. \_\_\_\_\_ game

9. \_\_\_\_\_ apple

20. \_\_\_\_\_ bedroom

10. \_\_\_\_\_ tree

21. \_\_\_\_\_ tomato

11. \_\_\_\_\_ chair

22. \_\_\_\_\_ truck

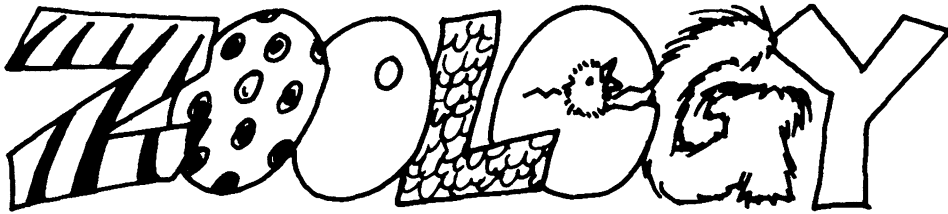
Name \_\_\_\_\_



Company's coming and we have to think about food. Find a descriptive adjective that starts with the same letter as the food. For example, you might describe zestful zucchini or yummy yams.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ cabbage
2. \_\_\_\_\_ ham
3. \_\_\_\_\_ cornbread
4. \_\_\_\_\_ beans
5. \_\_\_\_\_ rice
6. \_\_\_\_\_ applesauce
7. \_\_\_\_\_ meatloaf
8. \_\_\_\_\_ rolls
9. \_\_\_\_\_ salad
10. \_\_\_\_\_ potatoes
11. \_\_\_\_\_ carrots
12. \_\_\_\_\_ shrimp
13. \_\_\_\_\_ beets
14. \_\_\_\_\_ grits

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Take the “zoology” challenge! Find two adjectives to describe each animal. The challenge is that the adjectives must begin with the first letter of the name of the animal you’re describing.

Example: an alert, anxious alligator

1. a \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ bear

2. a \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ cow

3. a \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ dog

4. an \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ elephant

5. a \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ fox

6. a \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ giraffe

7. a \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ hog

8. an \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ iguana

9. a \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ jaguar

10. a \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ kitten

11. a \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ llama

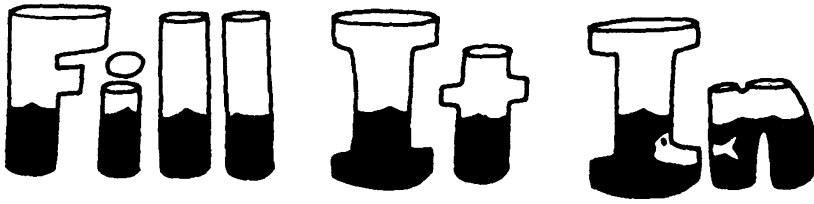
12. a \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ mouse



When you write, use adjectives to describe or tell more about each noun. Read each phrase and add two adjectives to describe each noun. Try to use different adjectives for each one.  
The sky's the limit!

1. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ sky
2. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ bucket
3. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ puppy
4. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ woman
5. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ picture
6. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ elephant
7. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ cave
8. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ storm
9. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ cowboy
10. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ snake
11. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ smell
12. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ movie
13. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ book
14. the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ house

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Comparative adjectives compare two or more people, places, or things. Add *-er* to the adjective when comparing two things to each other.

She had **longer** hair than her friend did.

Add *-est* to the adjective when comparing more than two things.

He is the **tallest** boy in our school.

Remember, if the word ends with *y*, change the *y* to an *i* before adding *-er* or *-est*.

**funny** → **funniest**

Fill in the chart with the correct comparative form of each adjective.

Adjective	Comparing Two	Comparing More Than Two
bright		
lucky		
fast		
young		
light		
mean		
calm		
rich		
quiet		
heavy		
soft		

Name \_\_\_\_\_

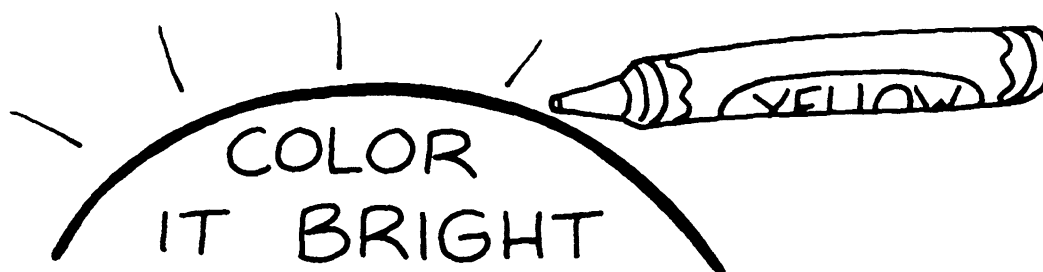
# Compare Me



Read each sentence. Write the correct comparative form of the adjective in parentheses in each blank.

1. This board is the \_\_\_\_\_ one we have. (rough)
2. Use the \_\_\_\_\_ color you can find. (light)
3. Are you \_\_\_\_\_ than Krista? (tall)
4. That was the \_\_\_\_\_ movie I've ever seen! (long)
5. Your hem is \_\_\_\_\_ on one side than it is on the other. (short)
6. The new highway is much \_\_\_\_\_ than the old one. (wide)
7. Olivia's cat is the \_\_\_\_\_ animal I've ever seen! (lazy)
8. The doctor was certainly \_\_\_\_\_ than Carly while Carly was getting stitches! (calm)
9. My brother is \_\_\_\_\_ than I am. (young)
10. The stack of books was \_\_\_\_\_ than the ones Andrea carried yesterday. (heavy)

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Add some color to each of these sentences! Write the correct comparative form of each adjective in parentheses in the blank.

1. That is the \_\_\_\_\_ story we've ever read. (strange)
2. Mr. Bell's class is much \_\_\_\_\_ than our class. (noisy)
3. Mara has the \_\_\_\_\_ puppy! (sweet)
4. I am much \_\_\_\_\_ than I was last week. (happy)
5. Celine worked \_\_\_\_\_ on her history project than she did on her science project. (hard)
6. Kevin climbed the \_\_\_\_\_ of all the students in the contest. (high)
7. That parrot has the \_\_\_\_\_ feathers of any bird I've seen. (bright)
8. My locker is the \_\_\_\_\_ it has ever been. (messy)
9. At the end of the race, the driver in the red car was named the \_\_\_\_\_ of all the drivers. (fast)
10. The science club met \_\_\_\_\_ than usual Friday night to finish their poster. (long)

# LET'S COMPARE

Read each sentence. Underline the correct word. Remember, when you compare one thing to another, add *-er* to the end of the base word. When you compare more than two things, add *-est* to the end of the base word. If the base word ends in *y*, change the *y* to *i* before adding *-er* or *-est*.

1. This movie is (longer, longest) than the one we saw yesterday.
2. Our vacation was (shorter, shortest) than our last one.
3. We went to the (larger, largest) mall in the world.
4. She is one of the (prettier, prettiest) girls I've ever seen.
5. Will was (closer, closest) to the door than Shanika.
6. In the circus, I saw the (taller, tallest) man in the world.
7. The rope was (tighter, tightest) than I imagined.
8. Madelyn is the (sweeter, sweetest) person in the choir.
9. James is the (happier, happiest) winner I've ever seen.
10. Jolene's bedroom was the (cleaner, cleanest) it has ever been.
11. This is the (nicer, nicest) gift I've ever gotten.
12. Mount Everest is (higher, highest) than Mount Fuji.



# One To Another

Sometimes adjectives are used to compare one thing to another. When an adjective compares one thing to another, it ends in *-er* like, *That boy is quieter than his brother.* When you compare more than two things, the adjective ends in *-est* like, *He's the quietest person in the class.*

Read each sentence. Underline the correct comparative adjective.

1. Jane is the (taller, tallest) girl in her class.
2. My poem is (longer, longest) than your poem.
3. December is a (colder, coldest) month than August.
4. Timmy has the (bigger, biggest) project in the science fair.
5. My turtle was the (slower, slowest) one in the race.
6. Is your bucket (fuller, fullest) than my bucket?
7. My name is (shorter, shortest) than your name.
8. The water is (calmer, calmest) than it was yesterday.
9. My computer works (faster, fastest) than your computer.
10. Today is the (longer, longest) day of the year.
11. He's the (stronger, strongest) weight lifter.
12. Which month is the (shorter, shortest)?

# 😊 Laughing 😊 All The Way 😊

Laugh all the way through this page as you learn to use comparative adjectives. Use the ending *-er* when you compare one thing to another. Use the ending *-est* when you compare one thing to many things. Read each sentence. Underline the correct adjective.

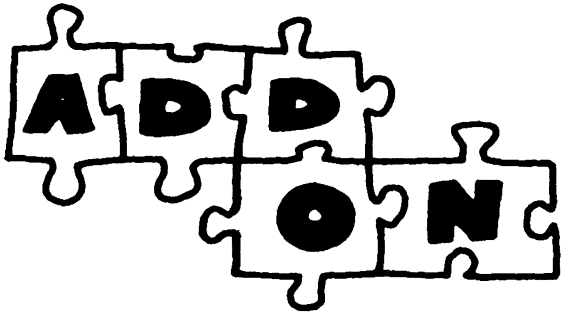
1. This story is the (funnier, funniest) one I've ever read!
2. James worked (harder, hardest) than Juan today.
3. Paula chose the (larger, largest) chair in the room.
4. The kite was (higher, highest) than the balloon.
5. The jacket was (cheaper, cheapest) than the coat.
6. The new building was the (taller, tallest) one in town.
7. In science class, we learned that water is (heavier, heaviest) than air.
8. Mr. Morris is the (nicer, nicest) neighbor we have.
9. She's the (prettier, prettiest) girl in our class.
10. Mike's face was (dirtier, dirtiest) than Yolanda's face.
11. Hannah has the (cuter, cutest) puppy I've ever seen.
12. Your chili is the (tastier, tastiest) in the contest.

# They Compare

Comparative adjectives compare things. To decide which word ending to use, check to see if two things are being compared or more than two things are being compared. When you compare two things, use the suffix *-er*. When more than two things are being compared, use the suffix *-est*.

Read the sentences. Underline the correct comparative adjective.

1. Tommy and Jason are the (faster, fastest) runners on the track team.
2. This parade is the (longer, longest) one I've ever been to.
3. Is she the (shorter, shortest) girl in our class?
4. Texas is (bigger, biggest) than Louisiana.
5. My school is the (newer, newest) one in the city.
6. That chair is the (smaller, smallest) one in the room.
7. August is usually the (warmer, warmest) month of the year.
8. He's the (nicer, nicest) teacher I've ever had.
9. This is the (older, oldest) jacket I have.
10. This book is the (shorter, shortest) one I read this week.
11. The sun seems (brighter, brightest) today than it was yesterday.
12. These math problems are (harder, hardest) than the ones we did last week.



Read each sentence. Add an adjective to each sentence.

**Adjectives**

- are words that describe nouns
- tell how many
- tell what kind

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ dog barked loudly at the passing cars.
2. Your \_\_\_\_\_ dress is very pretty.
3. Lee Ann read \_\_\_\_\_ books from the library this week.
4. Get out your \_\_\_\_\_ books.
5. Our cat had \_\_\_\_\_ kittens last night.
6. The boy wore a \_\_\_\_\_ jacket to school.
7. We have \_\_\_\_\_ hours until we leave.
8. Mrs. Jensen baked \_\_\_\_\_ cookies for our party.
9. Colleen got a \_\_\_\_\_ book for her birthday.
10. We put \_\_\_\_\_ pictures on the wall in our classroom.
11. The \_\_\_\_\_ girl wore a \_\_\_\_\_ ribbon.
12. The \_\_\_\_\_ clown rode in the \_\_\_\_\_ car.

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Color me with words! Read the story. Add adjectives to make the story interesting. Then, finish the story. Don't forget to use colorful adjectives!

The \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ man sat in the \_\_\_\_\_  
chair. It was a \_\_\_\_\_ day. The man planned to go to the  
\_\_\_\_\_ game. His \_\_\_\_\_ friend was picking him up.

As the \_\_\_\_\_ man waited, he watched a \_\_\_\_\_ dog  
chase a \_\_\_\_\_ ball down the \_\_\_\_\_ driveway. He  
heard a \_\_\_\_\_ bird singing a \_\_\_\_\_ song. He also  
saw a \_\_\_\_\_ cat.

Soon, the man's friend picked him up in his \_\_\_\_\_ car and they left.  
When they got to the \_\_\_\_\_ stadium, they didn't see any cars! So . . .

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# Possessives

Possessive nouns:

- are nouns that show ownership
- have an apostrophe
- can be either singular or plural.

A *singular possessive noun* shows that something belongs to only one person, place, or thing. The apostrophe comes after the noun and before the -s. **Sue's coat**

A *plural possessive noun* shows that something belongs to several people, places, or things. The apostrophe comes after the plural nouns ending in -s or -es. **the boys' bikes**

An *irregular possessive noun* is similar to a singular possessive noun. Put the apostrophe after the plural word and add -s. **the women's meeting**

Rewrite each word or phrase to make it possessive.

singular

1. girl \_\_\_\_\_

2. cat \_\_\_\_\_

plural

3. cars tires \_\_\_\_\_

4. dogs bones \_\_\_\_\_

irregular

5. men \_\_\_\_\_

6. children \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_



You'll be on top of it when you write the singular possessive of nouns. Always put an apostrophe before the *s* when you write the singular possessive of a word, such as *Fred-Fred's*. Write the singular possessive form of each noun. The first one is done for you.

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. boy <u>boy's</u> | 12. town _____    |
| 2. computer _____   | 13. Roberto _____ |
| 3. door _____       | 14. flower _____  |
| 4. teacher _____    | 15. library _____ |
| 5. ship _____       | 16. dresser _____ |
| 6. paper _____      | 17. movie _____   |
| 7. paint _____      | 18. zebra _____   |
| 8. shirt _____      | 19. state _____   |
| 9. landmark _____   | 20. kite _____    |
| 10. contest _____   | 21. sign _____    |
| 11. pet _____       | 22. ocean _____   |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

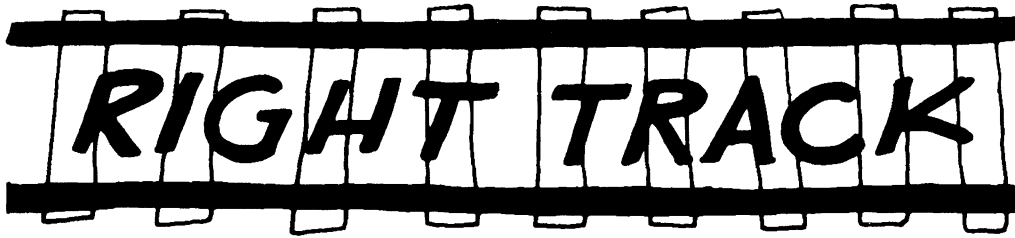


Change over these phrases! Make each one singular possessive.

1. the coat of the girl \_\_\_\_\_
2. the food of the cook \_\_\_\_\_
3. the snoring of the man \_\_\_\_\_
4. the clothing of the father \_\_\_\_\_
5. the computer of the salesperson \_\_\_\_\_
6. the writing of the author \_\_\_\_\_
7. the calendar of the teacher \_\_\_\_\_
8. the razor of the barber \_\_\_\_\_
9. the offices of the bank \_\_\_\_\_
10. the yelp of the dog \_\_\_\_\_
11. the slide of the playground \_\_\_\_\_
12. the pencil of the boy \_\_\_\_\_



Name \_\_\_\_\_



You're on the right track when you change these phrases to show the singular possessive form. Read each phrase. Then, write your new phrase on the line.

1. the pen of the man \_\_\_\_\_
2. the crib of the baby \_\_\_\_\_
3. the cough of the boy \_\_\_\_\_
4. the painting of the painter \_\_\_\_\_
5. the glare of the sun \_\_\_\_\_
6. the instrument of the musician \_\_\_\_\_
7. the poem of the writer \_\_\_\_\_
8. the song of the canary \_\_\_\_\_
9. the roar of the lion \_\_\_\_\_
10. the book of the dealer \_\_\_\_\_
11. the wheels of the truck \_\_\_\_\_
12. the leaves of the plant \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# 1, 2, <sup>OR</sup> More

Do one, two, or more of these phrases for practice. Make each phrase a singular possessive. Remember, to make a singular possessive noun, add an apostrophe and an -s.

1. the purse of the woman \_\_\_\_\_
2. the truck of the driver \_\_\_\_\_
3. the crying of the baby \_\_\_\_\_
4. the sound of the alarm \_\_\_\_\_
5. the song of the bird \_\_\_\_\_
6. the flag of the country \_\_\_\_\_
7. the zipper of the coat \_\_\_\_\_
8. the milk of the cow \_\_\_\_\_
9. the hardhat of the worker \_\_\_\_\_
10. the sound of the waterfall \_\_\_\_\_
11. the noise of the saw \_\_\_\_\_
12. the keys of the computer \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Note This



Note this! Read each phrase. Then, change the words to include a singular possessive noun. Write the new phrase on the line. The first one is done for you.

1. the house of the girl \_\_\_\_\_ *the girl's house*
2. the book of the library \_\_\_\_\_
3. the contest of the school \_\_\_\_\_
4. the beard of the man \_\_\_\_\_
5. the movement of the sun \_\_\_\_\_
6. the tires of the truck \_\_\_\_\_
7. the shelves of the store \_\_\_\_\_
8. the yells of the crowd \_\_\_\_\_
9. the hands of the clock \_\_\_\_\_
10. the coat of the doctor \_\_\_\_\_
11. the sound of the foghorn \_\_\_\_\_
12. the smell of the food \_\_\_\_\_

Now, write a sentence using each phrase on a separate sheet of paper.



Sharpen your skills by changing phrases to show singular possessive. Read each sentence. Then, change the underlined phrase to show singular possessive, and write it on the line.

1. The door of the office was replaced on Friday.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The parents of Tony went to the school program.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Last night we watched the video made by Larry.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. The cost of the motorcycle was more than we expected.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Our school enjoyed the exhibit of the museum on China.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. The paintings of the artist were hanging in the hall.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. The batteries in the smoke detector were dead.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. My uncle stopped the car when he heard the siren of the ambulance.

\_\_\_\_\_

# HANG AROUND

Hang around and learn how to change plural nouns to plural possessives. Remember, you use plural possessive nouns to show ownership by more than one person or thing.

To make the possessive form of a plural noun, look at how the word ends.

If the plural noun ends in -s or -es, add an apostrophe after the -s. **foxes' bushy tails**

If the plural noun doesn't end in -s, add an apostrophe and an -s. **women's clothes**

Now change these plural nouns to plural possessives.

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. clocks _____    | 12. students _____ |
| 2. states _____    | 13. animals _____  |
| 3. spoons _____    | 14. children _____ |
| 4. trains _____    | 15. men _____      |
| 5. horses _____    | 16. hands _____    |
| 6. dishes _____    | 17. fields _____   |
| 7. cards _____     | 18. shoes _____    |
| 8. notebooks _____ | 19. people _____   |
| 9. courts _____    | 20. shelves _____  |
| 10. letters _____  | 21. rooms _____    |
| 11. families _____ | 22. dresses _____  |

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Put on your “top hat” when you know how to change these phrases to show the plural possessive form. Read each phrase. Then, write your new phrase on the line.

1. the toys of the children \_\_\_\_\_
2. the doors of the houses \_\_\_\_\_
3. the ads of the companies \_\_\_\_\_
4. the schedules of the workers \_\_\_\_\_
5. the rooms of the teachers \_\_\_\_\_
6. the noises of the crickets \_\_\_\_\_
7. the hoses of the fire fighters \_\_\_\_\_
8. the notes of the students \_\_\_\_\_
9. the cars of the police officers \_\_\_\_\_
10. the journals of the girls \_\_\_\_\_
11. the windows of the businesses \_\_\_\_\_
12. the costumes of the dancers \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# TWO OR MORE

It's two or more when you talk about plural possessive nouns. Read each phrase. Then, write each phrase to show the plural possessive.

1. the horns of the cars \_\_\_\_\_
2. the marching of the soldiers \_\_\_\_\_
3. the flags of the countries \_\_\_\_\_
4. the smells of the flowers \_\_\_\_\_
5. the cards of the visitors \_\_\_\_\_
6. the tools of the workers \_\_\_\_\_
7. the croaking of the frogs \_\_\_\_\_
8. the mission of the astronauts \_\_\_\_\_
9. the headlights of the cars \_\_\_\_\_
10. the accounts of the reporters \_\_\_\_\_
11. the smiles of the children \_\_\_\_\_
12. the meeting of the singers \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Jump in to learn how to write plural possessive nouns in sentences. Read each sentence. Then, change the underlined phrase to show plural possessive, and write it on the line.

1. The heroic actions of the fire fighters earned medals of courage.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The people listened to the beautiful voices of the children.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Many of the flights of the airplanes were changed.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. The buses of the cities advertised the state celebration.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. The howls of the wolves could be heard at the campsite.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Before the game we listened to the instructions of the coaches.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. The libraries of all cities were closed in honor of the holiday.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. The windows of the businesses displayed the pictures of the winners.

\_\_\_\_\_



Name \_\_\_\_\_

# CLUE ME IN

Clue me in as to where to put the apostrophes in these sentences. Read each sentence. Then, write each sentence on the line, adding an apostrophe to show plural possessive.

1. The childrens songs were written by their teacher.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The horses hooves clopped loudly on the street.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. The baby birds chirping kept us awake.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. The Native Americans artifacts were on display in the lobby.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. The peoples committee met on Thursday to vote.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Many ball teams scores were shown on TV during the news.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. All police officers numbered cars are blue and white.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. The buses schedules were posted in the waiting room.

\_\_\_\_\_



What? Someone has stolen the apostrophes! Put the apostrophe back in each sentence. Then, write the new sentence on the line.

Remember:

- to make a singular noun possessive, add an apostrophe and -s
- when a plural noun ends in -s or -es, add only an apostrophe
- if the plural noun doesn't end in -s, add an apostrophe and -s

1. The boys bike was in the shop.

---

2. The two girls hands were dirty.

---

3. Many of the books covers were new.

---

4. The cooks apron was white.

---

5. Several boys parents came to school.

---

6. My friends puppy is lost.

---

7. They checked out books from the childrens library.

---

8. We lost six of these jars lids.

---

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# The RIGHT ROAD

You're on the right road when you use an apostrophe correctly to show ownership. Read each phrase. Turn the phrase around to show possession by using an apostrophe with the underlined word. The tips in the box will help you.

If you want to show one person owning something, put the apostrophe after the person and before you add the -s. **the boy's bike**

If you want to show more than one person owning something, add the -s and put the apostrophe after it. **the boys' bikes**

1. the truck of the mail carrier

\_\_\_\_\_

2. the homes of the students

\_\_\_\_\_

3. the hats of the clown

\_\_\_\_\_

4. the cars of the drivers

\_\_\_\_\_

5. the nose of the snowman

\_\_\_\_\_

6. the fur of the kitten

\_\_\_\_\_

7. the rays of the sun

\_\_\_\_\_

8. the pencils of the writer

\_\_\_\_\_

# Meet the Adverbs

*Adverbs* are words that tell us *when*, *where*, or *how* something happens. An adverb tells more about the verb in the sentence. It sometimes tells more about other words, too.

Example: I walked **slowly** to the door.      **slowly** tells *how* I walked  
I played ball **yesterday**.      **yesterday** tells *when*  
I put my books **there**.      **there** tells *where*

Choose an adverb from the box to complete each sentence. Use each adverb only once.

tonight

quickly

shortly

soon

there

loudly

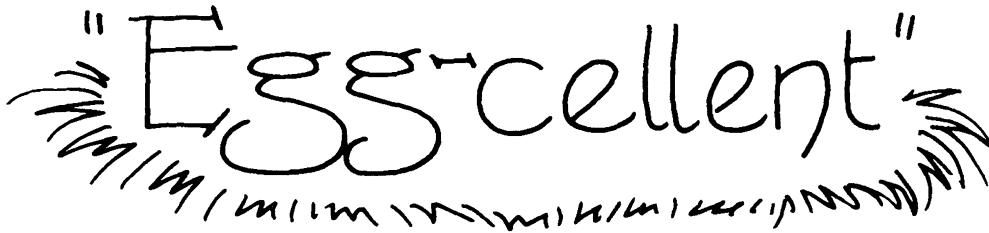
suddenly

slowly

quietly

away

1. The cat walked \_\_\_\_\_ to the door.
2. The man \_\_\_\_\_ walked into the room.
3. The bus drove \_\_\_\_\_ from the wreck.
4. I went \_\_\_\_\_ to the telephone.
5. The crowd yelled \_\_\_\_\_ during the game.
6. Our teacher will be here \_\_\_\_\_.
7. We are going to watch the news \_\_\_\_\_ on TV.
8. The truck turned \_\_\_\_\_ into the gas station.
9. Put your coat over \_\_\_\_\_.
10. We will go to the library \_\_\_\_\_.



You can do an “egg-cellent” job turning adjectives into adverbs. Adverbs can describe verbs, other adverbs, and sometimes adjectives.

Example: The noise blared **loudly** in the other room.  
**loudly** describes *how* the noise blared

The word *loud* is an adjective, but by adding *-ly* to it, it changes to an adverb. Many adverbs end with the suffix *-ly*. Add *-ly* to each adjective below to change it to an adverb.

light

brave

quiet

soft

slow

careful

wide

proud

sad

quick

sweet

safe

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Clean Up

You can make a clean sweep when you know what an adverb does. An adverb tells more about a verb. Adverbs tell when, where, and how something happens. Read each word and write whether the adverb tells *when*, *where*, or *how*.

1. easily \_\_\_\_\_

7. now \_\_\_\_\_

2. always \_\_\_\_\_

8. down \_\_\_\_\_

3. sadly \_\_\_\_\_

9. today \_\_\_\_\_

4. nearby \_\_\_\_\_

10. before \_\_\_\_\_

5. softly \_\_\_\_\_

11. below \_\_\_\_\_

6. there \_\_\_\_\_

12. proudly \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Where? When? How?

Adverbs are words that tell us when, where, or how. Read each word and write whether it tells you *when*, *where*, or *how*.

1. now \_\_\_\_\_

2. fast \_\_\_\_\_

3. early \_\_\_\_\_

4. here \_\_\_\_\_

5. always \_\_\_\_\_

6. down \_\_\_\_\_

7. suddenly \_\_\_\_\_

8. nearby \_\_\_\_\_

9. closer \_\_\_\_\_

10. outside \_\_\_\_\_

11. scarily \_\_\_\_\_

12. brightly \_\_\_\_\_

13. there \_\_\_\_\_

14. soon \_\_\_\_\_

15. slowly \_\_\_\_\_

16. carefully \_\_\_\_\_

17. below \_\_\_\_\_

18. yesterday \_\_\_\_\_

19. afterward \_\_\_\_\_

20. softly \_\_\_\_\_

21. today \_\_\_\_\_

22. inside \_\_\_\_\_

23. closer \_\_\_\_\_

24. quickly \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Well, what do you know? Adverbs tell how, when, or where something happens. Write whether each adverb tells you *how*, *when*, or *where*.

- |                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. brightly _____  | 13. slowly _____    |
| 2. softly _____    | 14. later _____     |
| 3. sooner _____    | 15. there _____     |
| 4. carefully _____ | 16. harder _____    |
| 5. here _____      | 17. sometimes _____ |
| 6. hardest _____   | 18. quietly _____   |
| 7. ever _____      | 19. strangely _____ |
| 8. soon _____      | 20. shyly _____     |
| 9. lately _____    | 21. playfully _____ |
| 10. very _____     | 22. tomorrow _____  |
| 11. tonight _____  | 23. often _____     |
| 12. sweetly _____  | 24. away _____      |



Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Well Done!

How do you know? When do you know? Where do you know? Write whether each adverb tells *how*, *when*, or *where*.

- |                      |                   |                     |
|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. beautifully _____ | 10. there _____   | 19. weekly _____    |
| 2. slowly _____      | 11. today _____   | 20. happily _____   |
| 3. north _____       | 12. quickly _____ | 21. tomorrow _____  |
| 4. completely _____  | 13. soon _____    | 22. carefully _____ |
| 5. fast _____        | 14. rapidly _____ | 23. here _____      |
| 6. softly _____      | 15. loudly _____  | 24. well _____      |
| 7. swiftly _____     | 16. lately _____  | 25. west _____      |
| 8. tightly _____     | 17. very _____    | 26. now _____       |
| 9. yesterday _____   | 18. briefly _____ | 27. perfectly _____ |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# How Did It Happen?

Adverbs often tell *how* something happened. Name the adverb in each sentence that tells *how*.

1. The boy walked slowly to his room.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. I want you to finish your work quickly.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. The little girl crossed the road safely.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. The classes sang the song together for the school.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Kim carefully put her work in her folder.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. The stars were shining brightly last night.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. You do your work so well!

\_\_\_\_\_

8. He wrote his name very carelessly.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. Jerry softly whispered his answer.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. Slowly the snake crawled into its hole.

\_\_\_\_\_

11. The teacher treated all of the children fairly.

\_\_\_\_\_

12. The radio blared loudly in the night.

\_\_\_\_\_

# Just Say When

Some adverbs tell you *when* something has happened. Underline the adverb in each sentence that tells *when*.

1. Laurie will give her report this afternoon in class.
2. Tomorrow Mr. Lane will demonstrate a science experiment.
3. Suddenly there was a loud blast coming from the factory.
4. Our teacher will soon have to reorder chalk for our classroom.
5. I will be with you shortly after lunch.
6. The student looked at the clock again, but it hadn't moved.
7. You should never cross the street without looking both ways.
8. Our neighbors recently moved to Alberta to be near their family.
9. Today there will be a magic show in the auditorium.
10. The pictures you want to have framed will be ready soon.
11. We designed a new cover for the school yearbook yesterday.
12. Our dog always tries to chase the cat up the tree.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Where Is It?

You want to know where? An adverb often tells you *where* something is. Identify the adverb in each sentence that tells you *where*.

1. We put our books there when we're done with our work. \_\_\_\_\_
2. You should look for your basketball near the playground. \_\_\_\_\_
3. We watched as the diver came up for air. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Our building is located near the city park. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Would you please step behind the line? \_\_\_\_\_
6. I need to go inside and get my sweater. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Did you go there after school? \_\_\_\_\_
8. I can walk ahead of you and lead the way. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You left your bike outside last night. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Put your new shoes on the shelf above the coats. \_\_\_\_\_
11. We were able to park nearby when we went to the concert. \_\_\_\_\_
12. The dog jumped through the hoop. \_\_\_\_\_

# Where, Oh Where?

Would you like to know where it is? Find the word or words that tell you *where* in each sentence. Underline your answer.

1. Anthony put his books on the counter so he wouldn't forget them.
2. The two men sat on the park bench and played checkers.
3. Susan hurried into the house to answer the telephone.
4. Why don't you put the potted plant over there?
5. The tiny frog sat on the lily pad watching the fly.
6. Randy carelessly stepped on a rusty nail outside as he played.
7. Several students in our class had a dance recital at the community center.
8. Our cousins left Friday afternoon to go to Grandma's.
9. The crowd laughed as the clown jumped through the hoop.
10. We each drank a glass of orange juice in the kitchen.
11. Aunt Lucia put the basket of fruit on the kitchen table.
12. The children took their books back to the library on Tuesday.

# Did You Know?

Did you know that the suffix *-ly* sometimes signals an adverb? Adverbs tell *when*, *where*, or *how* something happens. Complete each sentence with the best adverb from the box.

happily	slowly	quickly	silently	neatly	carefully
soon	gently	widely	often	nearly	late

1. The man limped \_\_\_\_\_ across the yard.
2. You must hurry to class so you won't be \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The mischievous child grinned \_\_\_\_\_ at the clown.
4. The mother \_\_\_\_\_ rocked her baby.
5. Put your books \_\_\_\_\_ on the shelf.
6. The coach told the shortstop to move \_\_\_\_\_ to the ball.
7. The prince and princess lived \_\_\_\_\_ ever after.
8. The black cat crept \_\_\_\_\_ toward the mouse.
9. Ginny put the baby \_\_\_\_\_ in her crib.
10. We will \_\_\_\_\_ be out for summer vacation.
11. Do you get to see your favorite team play \_\_\_\_\_?
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ tripped over the ball on the stairs.

# Hand Me an Adverb

Lend a hand by choosing an adverb from the box to complete each sentence.

1. The woman held her injured leg and \_\_\_\_\_ walked up the steps.
2. The scientist \_\_\_\_\_ poured liquid into the test tube.
3. Uncle Mario \_\_\_\_\_ wrote the directions to the auto parts store.
4. Please put all your coats over \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The mother whispered \_\_\_\_\_ into the sleeping baby's ear.
6. The class \_\_\_\_\_ gets to go on field trips.
7. The nurse slipped \_\_\_\_\_ into the patient's room.
8. You should \_\_\_\_\_ wash your hands before meals.
9. The jet flew \_\_\_\_\_ across the sky.
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ travel to see our grandparents.
11. The light shone \_\_\_\_\_ in his eyes.
12. The woman thanked the boys \_\_\_\_\_ for their help.

hastily  
swiftly  
gratefully

there  
silently  
slowly

carefully  
seldom  
often

always  
softly  
brightly

# Lost Adverbs

The adverbs are lost! Help by reading each sentence and writing an adverb from the box in each blank.

1. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ ran to meet his friend at the park.
2. The skaters moved \_\_\_\_\_ to the music.
3. All the children waited \_\_\_\_\_ for the storyteller to start.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ we will go shopping downtown.
5. The pans crashed \_\_\_\_\_ to the floor.
6. We will be going to the party \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The students worked \_\_\_\_\_ on their projects in the library.
8. My parents \_\_\_\_\_ take me to visit my grandfather.
9. Please put your coats over \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Music played \_\_\_\_\_ in the waiting room.

there	quickly	patiently	soon	softly
quietly	gracefully	often	noisily	tomorrow



Name \_\_\_\_\_



You'll be on top of the world when you use these adverbs in sentences. Choose an adverb from the box to complete each sentence.

yesterday	now	down	hard	here
fast	below	slowly	well	loudly

1. The music played \_\_\_\_\_ in the room.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ I went to the library to do my homework.
3. Put the pan \_\_\_\_\_ the sink.
4. Sit \_\_\_\_\_ and read your book.
5. Kyle worked \_\_\_\_\_ to finish his assignment.
6. I hope that you feel \_\_\_\_\_ today and are ready to work.
7. Did you see how \_\_\_\_\_ that truck went?
8. I would like you to take this message to the office \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Please turn around \_\_\_\_\_ so I can see your new outfit!
10. If you look \_\_\_\_\_ the page, you'll find your word.

# Place an Ad

Want to place an ad? An “ad”-verb, that is. Complete each sentence with an adverb from the box.

1. The little kitten \_\_\_\_\_ chased the ball all over the room.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ we heard a loud noise!
3. The librarian worked \_\_\_\_\_ putting away books.
4. I want you to do your puzzle over \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We will be leaving to visit our grandparents \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The man snored so \_\_\_\_\_ that he woke himself up.
7. Mrs. Kellogg told me to put the games \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Courtney smiled \_\_\_\_\_ at her teacher.
9. I am \_\_\_\_\_ happy to have you visit in our home.
10. We are going to the store \_\_\_\_\_ after school.
11. The doctor walked \_\_\_\_\_ down the hall.
12. Put the dishes \_\_\_\_\_ the cabinet.

sweetly  
playfully  
tomorrow  
soon  
inside  
here  
quickly  
quietly  
loudly  
suddenly  
there  
very

# Compared What?

Adverbs can be used to compare just like adjectives can. When an adverb compares two things, the adverb ends in *-er*. When an adverb compares more than two things, the adverb ends in *-est*.

Example: He is a **faster** runner than Bob. (comparing two people)  
He is the **fastest** runner of all. (comparing more than two people)

Underline the correct comparative adverb in each sentence.

1. He worked (harder, hardest) than John worked.
2. I got to school (later, latest) than I did yesterday.
3. Of everyone on the team, Maria jumped (higher, highest).
4. Sammy walked (slower, slowest) to class than Tevin did.
5. Mark's band was (louder, loudest) than Kellie's band.
6. Amanda's new apartment is (closer, closest) to school than her old one.
7. This weather is the (rougher, roughest) we've ever had.
8. The flood waters rose (higher, highest) than last year.
9. Carrie ran the (farther, farthest) of anyone.
10. Ms. Fisher's class was the (quieter, quietest) in the school.

# Negatives

There are some words that are called *negative* words. These words usually come right after the verb in a sentence. They completely change the meaning of a sentence because they mean that something is denied or is not going to happen.

Negative words are:

no	nowhere	never
none	nobody	
nothing	not	

A *contraction* combines two words to make one word. In a contraction, at least one letter of the words is left out. An apostrophe takes the place of the missing letter. Here are some examples of contractions.

did not	—	didn't
cannot	—	can't
are not	—	aren't
could not	—	couldn't
would not	—	wouldn't
should not	—	shouldn't
do not	—	don't
is not	—	isn't

Underline the negative word or contraction in each sentence.

1. The dog wouldn't go outside.
2. I have never seen such a big mess!
3. Mr. Hunter told us not to make a lot of noise.
4. Tori isn't tall enough to ride the roller coaster.
5. Melissa had no idea where her homework was.
6. We aren't the only ones who are late.

# Don't Say No

Negative words are usually found after the verb in a sentence. Negative words tell the reader something is denied, rejected, or refused. It's sort of like saying *no*.

Choose a negative word from the box to complete each sentence. You'll use some words more than once.

no	nobody
none	not
nothing	never
nowhere	

1. \_\_\_\_\_ wants to have pizza for lunch.
2. I have \_\_\_\_\_ seen our new neighbor yet.
3. The library book was \_\_\_\_\_ to be found!
4. \_\_\_\_\_ of the teachers went to the meeting.
5. The sign on the building said Do \_\_\_\_\_ Enter.
6. I have \_\_\_\_\_ seen such a beautiful garden!
7. They did \_\_\_\_\_ want to stay at the park very long.
8. The team has \_\_\_\_\_ to practice.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ of her pictures was sold.
10. Peter did \_\_\_\_\_ to help his sister.
11. The dog did \_\_\_\_\_ but sleep all day.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ thank you, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ very hungry right now.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# No! No! No!

Finish each sentence using a word from the box. You'll use some words more than once.

no	nobody
none	not
nothing	never
nowhere	

1. I have \_\_\_\_\_ done any of my homework.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ came to visit Lara when she was sick.
3. My dad \_\_\_\_\_ forgets to lock the car door when he gets out.
4. There is \_\_\_\_\_ we can do to help.
5. Say \_\_\_\_\_ about our surprise party for Jeff.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ of our visitors had been to our city before.
7. I have \_\_\_\_\_ seen that TV show.
8. We should \_\_\_\_\_ say bad things about our friends.
9. Tanisha did \_\_\_\_\_ finish her homework before class.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ of the students in my class is in the play.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ answered the question correctly!
12. You have \_\_\_\_\_ been to my apartment, have you?

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# PICK A WORD

Negative words completely change the meaning of a sentence. When we think of negative words, the first word we think of is the word *not*. There are other negative words to choose from:

none  
no  
not  
never

nothing  
nobody  
nowhere

Write the negative word from each phrase in the blank.

1. you are not \_\_\_\_\_

11. going nowhere \_\_\_\_\_

2. have not gone \_\_\_\_\_

12. did not have \_\_\_\_\_

3. with nothing \_\_\_\_\_

13. have no water \_\_\_\_\_

4. none of them \_\_\_\_\_

14. nobody has \_\_\_\_\_

5. doing nothing \_\_\_\_\_

15. never been \_\_\_\_\_

6. with no line \_\_\_\_\_

16. see none \_\_\_\_\_

7. have no book \_\_\_\_\_

17. am not going \_\_\_\_\_

8. none of mine \_\_\_\_\_

18. say nothing \_\_\_\_\_

9. nobody here \_\_\_\_\_

19. not full of \_\_\_\_\_

10. never did \_\_\_\_\_

20. went nowhere \_\_\_\_\_

# What's A Contraction?

What is a *contraction*? A contraction combines two words into one word by leaving out letters or sounds. A contraction always has an apostrophe where the letters or sounds are omitted. For example, one of the most important contractions we have is when a verb is followed by the word *not*.

When we combine the word *not* with another word, it means that something did not, or is not going to happen.

did not — didn't	do not — don't
cannot — can't	will not — won't
are not — aren't	is not — isn't
could not — couldn't	should not — shouldn't
would not — wouldn't	

The words *will not* are the only contraction where the spelling of the word changes. The words *will not* combine to make the contraction *won't*.

Write contractions for the following words.

1. is not \_\_\_\_\_
2. will not \_\_\_\_\_
3. cannot \_\_\_\_\_
4. could not \_\_\_\_\_
5. did not \_\_\_\_\_

6. would not \_\_\_\_\_
7. are not \_\_\_\_\_
8. should not \_\_\_\_\_
9. do not \_\_\_\_\_

Make the words in parentheses into a contraction. Put your new word in the blank.

10. Janet \_\_\_\_\_ go with us to the movie. (cannot)
11. Dana \_\_\_\_\_ be in class today. (will not)



# ALL ABOUT CONTRACTIONS

Sometimes we make words shorter by putting two words together to make one word. These combined words are called *contractions*. In each contraction, at least one letter in one of the words is left out. An apostrophe takes the place of the missing letter.

Read the following sentences:

**Are not** you going? **Aren't** you going?

You **do not** need to help me. You **don't** need to help me.

Which sentences sound more like the way we talk? We use contractions in our everyday speech. It sounds more natural to use contractions.

Read the words below. Each one has a verb and the word *not*. When we use the word *not*, we're making a negative statement. We're saying that something is *not* going to happen.

When you make a contraction using the word *not*, you leave out the letter *o*. An apostrophe takes its place. Make a contraction for each set of words.

1. did not \_\_\_\_\_

7. are not \_\_\_\_\_

2. does not \_\_\_\_\_

8. would not \_\_\_\_\_

3. has not \_\_\_\_\_

9. have not \_\_\_\_\_

4. should not \_\_\_\_\_

10. cannot \_\_\_\_\_

5. is not \_\_\_\_\_

11. were not \_\_\_\_\_

6. do not \_\_\_\_\_

12. had not \_\_\_\_\_

# Contraction Construction

You know that a contraction is two words that are joined to make a shorter word. Each contraction must have an apostrophe. The apostrophe shows that certain letters are left out.

Read each sentence below. Use the underlined words to make a contraction. Write your contractions on the lines.

1. Sandy is not going to go to the tournament on Saturday. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Ricky and Tom have not been absent once this year! \_\_\_\_\_
3. He cannot walk on his crutches very well yet. \_\_\_\_\_
4. We were not told about the storm that was coming. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Shelley was not a very careful driver. \_\_\_\_\_
6. She could not understand the math problem. \_\_\_\_\_
7. We have not seen the Statue of Liberty. \_\_\_\_\_
8. You should not be out in this bad weather. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Suspense movies are not my favorite kind of movie. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Our air conditioner at home is not working. \_\_\_\_\_
11. I would not go too far out on that dangerous ledge. \_\_\_\_\_
12. He is not very happy about going to the skating rink. \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Read each sentence and find the negative words. The negative words in the sentences may also be contractions. Circle each contraction and each negative word. If the sentence has a contraction, write the two words that make it up on the line.

1. Weren't you able to go to see your grandparents? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Why aren't you going to take the computer class? \_\_\_\_\_
3. He doesn't hold the bat correctly. \_\_\_\_\_
4. He walked in the forest, going nowhere. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Maria doesn't know what that means. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I have nothing to do after school today. \_\_\_\_\_
7. When I opened the envelope, there was nothing inside! \_\_\_\_\_
8. John didn't do his homework until after supper. \_\_\_\_\_
9. They aren't going to be in the city marathon race tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I can't seem to get this jar open. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Shouldn't you be leaving for the airport now? \_\_\_\_\_
12. You didn't go to the park last Saturday, did you? \_\_\_\_\_
13. There are none left. \_\_\_\_\_
14. We never get to play soccer during the week. \_\_\_\_\_

# ✓ Checking It Out

Check out how you combine *will* and *not* into a contraction. Combining these two words to make a contraction completely changes the spelling. The contraction of *will not* is always spelled *won't*.

Read each sentence. Make a contraction with the two words at the end of the sentence. Write your contraction on the line.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you want to go to the mall with me? (Do not)
2. Why \_\_\_\_\_ you stay a little longer? (cannot)
3. I hope that I \_\_\_\_\_ forget to bring your package. (will not)
4. There \_\_\_\_\_ any good programs on TV tonight. (are not)
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ wait until we got to the airport. (could not)
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ staying in the city very long. (is not)
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ want to be late to the concert. (do not)
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ driving to the city until Saturday. (were not)
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ try to call Grandma until tomorrow. (will not)
10. The bear \_\_\_\_\_ seem to want to go into his cave at the zoo. (does not)
11. Those people \_\_\_\_\_ going to be late for the concert. (are not)
12. She \_\_\_\_\_ too worried about writing her report. (was not)

# TAKE OFF

Launch into writing contractions with each word below. Take each word and make it into a negative contraction.

- |           |       |           |       |
|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|
| 1. can    | _____ | 8. did    | _____ |
| 2. will   | _____ | 9. have   | _____ |
| 3. do     | _____ | 10. were  | _____ |
| 4. should | _____ | 11. is    | _____ |
| 5. was    | _____ | 12. would | _____ |
| 6. are    | _____ | 13. does  | _____ |
| 7. had    | _____ | 14. has   | _____ |

Read each sentence. Underline the negative word.

15. No one has come to see me while I've been sick.
16. I will have none of that!
17. There is nowhere to go this Saturday.
18. I've never seen such a great parade!
19. None of my friends planned to go on a trip during the holidays.
20. I have never seen your apartment.
21. Nobody is going to be able to beat your score.
22. Uncle Dan said there were no cookies in the bag.
23. When I got the box, there were none left.
24. Alyssa had never been to Ohio.

# LONG and SHORT

Contractions take two words and combine them into one word. Contractions always use an apostrophe. Let's look at the contraction with the verb *have* and the negative *not*. Look at the examples below which use the present tense.

## Singular

I have not — I haven't  
 you have not — you haven't  
 he has not — he hasn't  
 she has not — she hasn't  
 it has not — it hasn't

## Plural

we have not — we haven't  
 you have not — you haven't  
 they have not — they haven't

When we use the past tense with singular and plural pronouns, we use the contraction *hadn't*.

Read each sentence. Write a contraction for the two words in parentheses at the end of each sentence.

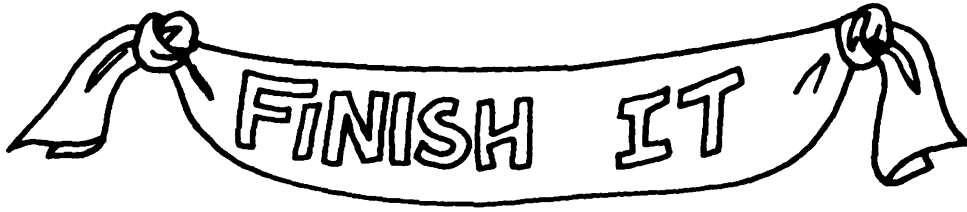
1. I \_\_\_\_\_ finished my drawing yet. (have not)
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ brought any of the science projects to display. (has not)
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ waited too long when the bus arrived. (had not)
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ finished washing the car. (have not)
5. It \_\_\_\_\_ stopped raining all day long. (has not)
6. Trevor's parents \_\_\_\_\_ been able to see him play ball. (have not)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ you tried the puzzle yet? (Have not)
8. Why \_\_\_\_\_ you come over for a visit? (have not)



Let's stir up a contraction for each sentence below. Read each sentence and form a contraction using the words in parentheses. Write your contractions on the lines.

1. I'm so sorry that she \_\_\_\_\_ go with us. (cannot)
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ have to go to the doctor today. (did not)
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ finished packing our things into the truck yet. (have not)
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ done much of his work yet. (has not)
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ going to get to go there today. (are not)
6. People \_\_\_\_\_ break any laws. (should not)
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ have time to mow the lawn. (would not)
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ able to make the concert. (were not)
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ find my jacket! (cannot)
10. For some reason, I \_\_\_\_\_ understand this problem. (do not)
11. Who \_\_\_\_\_ brought her costume for the play? (has not)
12. The singer \_\_\_\_\_ late for the concert. (was not)
13. William said that he \_\_\_\_\_ come with us this time. (cannot)
14. There \_\_\_\_\_ any lights on in the apartment. (were not)

Name \_\_\_\_\_



If you put your thinking cap on, you'll get all of these sentences correct! Use the word in parentheses to make a negative contraction. Write the contraction on the line.

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ happy with his work for art class. (was)
2. Today \_\_\_\_\_ a good day to go to the mall. (is)
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ want to waste your time. (do)
4. How many of you \_\_\_\_\_ going to go? (are)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ that movie excellent? (Was)
6. That \_\_\_\_\_ such a good idea. (is)
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ work so hard! (should)
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ been able to find us a place to park. (has)
9. They \_\_\_\_\_ gotten home from the game yet. (have)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ you going to be in the play? (Are)
11. The bank \_\_\_\_\_ be open after 4:00. (would)
12. He \_\_\_\_\_ waste any time getting here! (did)
13. My friends \_\_\_\_\_ be going to the carnival. (will)
14. Carla \_\_\_\_\_ catch the ball very well. (can)



Name \_\_\_\_\_



You're tops in my book when you have learned how to form and use contractions. Write each contraction on the line.

1. will not \_\_\_\_\_

2. cannot \_\_\_\_\_

3. did not \_\_\_\_\_

4. should not \_\_\_\_\_

5. is not \_\_\_\_\_

6. does not \_\_\_\_\_

7. would not \_\_\_\_\_

8. have not \_\_\_\_\_

9. has not \_\_\_\_\_

10. do not \_\_\_\_\_

11. are not \_\_\_\_\_

12. were not \_\_\_\_\_

13. was not \_\_\_\_\_

# You're Not

The word *not* is a tricky little word. It can change the whole meaning of a sentence. Even though it's a small word, it's a very important one.

I'm going to help you.

I'm **not** going to help you.

See how the meaning changes? Read the sentences below. Then, write the sentence and add *not* to change the meaning.

1. We are planning to be at the meeting.

---

2. I did watch the big game on TV last night.

---

3. The store is near the new school.

---

4. We would like to play.

---

5. Do open the door before you turn off the alarm.

---

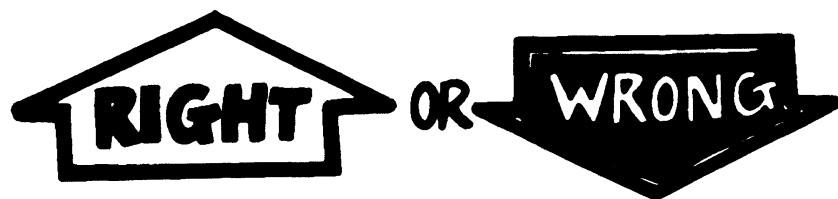
6. We can go with you.

---

# A BIG SQUEEZE

Squeeze these words and make them into contractions! Read each sentence and make a contraction using the words in parentheses.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ be late for the appointment. (should not)
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ call for several hours. (did not)
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ helping with the decorations. (is not)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you know where you left your coat? (Do not)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ he been here before? (Has not)
6. They \_\_\_\_\_ answer the questions the man asked. (could not)
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ leave the house for another hour. (will not)
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ been to the store yet. (have not)
9. Terri \_\_\_\_\_ be in class today. (will not)
10. Michelle \_\_\_\_\_ go to the movie with us tonight. (cannot)
11. Our neighbors \_\_\_\_\_ have to move away. (did not)
12. We \_\_\_\_\_ able to see the moon because it's too cloudy. (are not)



What is right and what is wrong? Read the words in bold print. Then, circle the contraction that's been correctly made from those words.

- |                      |           |           |           |
|----------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. <b>cannot</b>     | can'n't   | ca'nt     | can't     |
| 2. <b>did not</b>    | didn't    | din't     | did'nt    |
| 3. <b>could not</b>  | coul'n't  | couldn't  | couldnt   |
| 4. <b>will not</b>   | willn't   | won't     | wouldn't  |
| 5. <b>has not</b>    | hassn't   | hasnt'    | hasn't    |
| 6. <b>do not</b>     | don't     | do'nt     | doen't    |
| 7. <b>is not</b>     | isnt      | is'nt     | isn't     |
| 8. <b>are not</b>    | ar'nt     | arn't     | aren't    |
| 9. <b>should not</b> | shouldn't | shoul'n't | should'nt |
| 10. <b>have not</b>  | havn't    | haven't   | hasn't    |
| 11. <b>would not</b> | would'nt  | woul'n't  | wouldn't  |
| 12. <b>does not</b>  | does'nt   | doesn't   | doesnt'   |

# Prepositions

*Prepositions* are words that show how nouns and pronouns are related to the other words in a sentence. Using prepositions helps to make our writing more clear.

Read the sentence below. Notice that a word is missing.

We drove \_\_\_\_\_ the store.

Is this sentence clear to you? Now read the sentence again, this time adding a preposition.

We drove *to* the store.

Here's a list of commonly used prepositions.

to	from	with	above	about	into
at	along	before	beside	by	down
during	for	from	in	of	on
over	since	under	with	without	below

The meaning of a sentence can be changed by using different prepositions.

I went *to* the party.  
 I went *during* the party.  
 I went *before* the party.  
 I went *by* the party.

Read each sentence. Add a preposition so it makes sense.

- Jessica sat \_\_\_\_\_ Pat.
- Barry got to school \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher!
- We went \_\_\_\_\_ the stairs to the gym.
- Put the books \_\_\_\_\_ the shelf.

# GET INTO POSITION

A *preposition* is a word that is “positioned before” a noun or a pronoun in a sentence. It connects a noun or pronoun to the rest of the sentence. The words in the box are prepositions.

in	from	outside	into	through	beside	beneath
out	between	off	over	around	at	below
up	behind	toward	by	under	toward	on
down	inside	upon	to	above	underneath	within

Read each phrase. Add a different preposition to complete each one.

- |                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. _____ the door  | 7. _____ the pages   |
| 2. _____ the jar   | 8. _____ the sink    |
| 3. _____ the cave  | 9. _____ the house   |
| 4. _____ the hill  | 10. _____ the clouds |
| 5. _____ the movie | 11. _____ my friend  |
| 6. _____ the wall  | 12. _____ the circle |

# LAUNCH INTO IT

Launch into prepositions! Circle the words that could be used as prepositions.

hard	between	without	hardly	before	easy
above	pretty	sign	over	you	through
into	yours	space	during	below	out
from	inside	outside	with	sadly	in
down	fell	under	by	about	slowly
for	off	nine	put	on	ride

Match each preposition to its opposite.

- |                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| 1. _____ up     | A. from    |
| 2. _____ on     | B. before  |
| 3. _____ inside | C. off     |
| 4. _____ under  | D. down    |
| 5. _____ to     | E. outside |
| 6. _____ after  | F. over    |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# That's Purr-fect

When you learn about prepositions, you'll be purr-fectly grand! Underline each word that could be used as a preposition.

swim	how	below	outside	my
into	was	what	where	around
above	between	under	off	his
box	over	from	in	on
within	through	your	down	hers
by	the	mine	why	behind

Read the phrases. Add a different preposition to each one.

\_\_\_\_\_ the table

\_\_\_\_\_ the city

\_\_\_\_\_ the chair

\_\_\_\_\_ the tree

\_\_\_\_\_ the door

\_\_\_\_\_ my friend

\_\_\_\_\_ the corner

\_\_\_\_\_ the rainbow



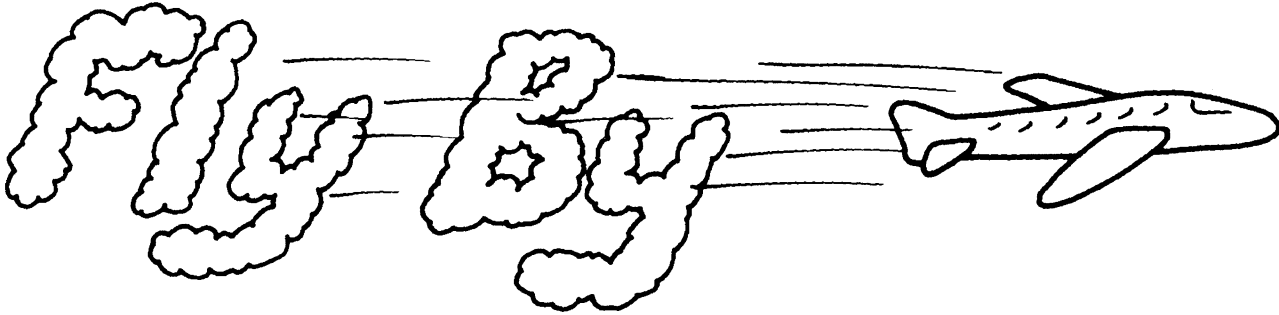
Name \_\_\_\_\_

# *Ready To Go*

When you understand prepositions, you'll be ready to go! A prepositional phrase begins with a preposition and ends with either a noun or a pronoun. In the phrases below, add a noun to make the prepositional phrase complete.

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. in the _____     | 12. outside the _____ |
| 2. over a _____     | 13. around the _____  |
| 3. under the _____  | 14. below the _____   |
| 4. up the _____     | 15. by the _____      |
| 5. at the _____     | 16. to the _____      |
| 6. without a _____  | 17. from the _____    |
| 7. on the _____     | 18. behind the _____  |
| 8. beside the _____ | 19. after the _____   |
| 9. off the _____    | 20. during the _____  |
| 10. among the _____ | 21. for a _____       |
| 11. above the _____ | 22. of the _____      |

Name \_\_\_\_\_



You'll zip through prepositions with flying colors! Read each phrase. If the phrase has a preposition and a noun or pronoun, write *yes* on the line. If the preposition, noun, or pronoun is missing, write *no*.

- |                   |       |                     |       |
|-------------------|-------|---------------------|-------|
| 1. by the door    | _____ | 11. for me          | _____ |
| 2. without it     | _____ | 12. a place         | _____ |
| 3. flying high    | _____ | 13. can't do        | _____ |
| 4. during the day | _____ | 14. in the car      | _____ |
| 5. around noon    | _____ | 15. across the road | _____ |
| 6. over the hill  | _____ | 16. by myself       | _____ |
| 7. from a friend  | _____ | 17. nearby          | _____ |
| 8. off the table  | _____ | 18. after you       | _____ |
| 9. for Sammy      | _____ | 19. under my bed    | _____ |
| 10. the ship      | _____ | 20. behind me       | _____ |

# COMING THROUGH

Prepositions are coming through! Read each sentence. Then, circle the preposition that makes the sentence correct.

1. Will you pour the water (up, in) the glass?
2. I followed (after, before) Jimmy as we went up the stairs.
3. Dave put the horseshoe (down, over) the door for good luck.
4. I'll go (off, with) you to the post office.
5. The letter *N* comes (before, after) the letter *R*.
6. The girl put the bookmark (outside, inside) the book to mark her place.
7. The ball rolled slowly (across, under) the street.
8. Lance put his trophy (on, off) the shelf.
9. I need to go to the library (between, after) school today.
10. This story is (during, about) a pirate and his lost treasure.
11. I wrote my project neatly (on, off) the lines.
12. Be sure to brush your teeth (after, before) you go to bed.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Sitting Tall

You'll be sitting tall when you learn to recognize and use prepositions! Complete each sentence with a preposition from the box.

in	under	over	from
around	inside	by	down
on	through	with	up

1. Be careful when you walk \_\_\_\_\_ those steps.
2. The mountain climber struggled his way \_\_\_\_\_ the mountain.
3. I have sand \_\_\_\_\_ my shoes.
4. Check \_\_\_\_\_ your bed to see if your shoes are there.
5. Michael went to the park \_\_\_\_\_ Tamara.
6. Please put the ketchup \_\_\_\_\_ the refrigerator.
7. I got a letter \_\_\_\_\_ my best friend yesterday.
8. The rainbow went \_\_\_\_\_ the clouds.
9. The runner ran \_\_\_\_\_ the track as fast as she could.
10. The students went \_\_\_\_\_ the gym to get to the buses.
11. If you stand \_\_\_\_\_ me, we can win the contest!
12. I put syrup \_\_\_\_\_ my pancakes.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Get The Scoop



Get the scoop on using prepositions! Use the prepositions in the box to complete each sentence.

out	between	from	under
with	off	inside	around
down	below	behind	to

1. Did you see the boys walking \_\_\_\_\_ the road?
2. Look \_\_\_\_\_ the sink and see if you can find the sponge.
3. Please check to make sure that I turned \_\_\_\_\_ the oven.
4. The dog chased the cat \_\_\_\_\_ the yard.
5. Go \_\_\_\_\_ the house and bring me my keys.
6. Look \_\_\_\_\_ the window and see who is at the door.
7. I think my money dropped \_\_\_\_\_ the table.
8. This letter is addressed \_\_\_\_\_ you.
9. Many different forms of life live \_\_\_\_\_ the coral reefs.
10. This present is \_\_\_\_\_ me.
11. My card dropped \_\_\_\_\_ the bookcases.
12. I'll go \_\_\_\_\_ you to your doctor's appointment.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Spotlight

Let's put the spotlight on prepositions. Read each word in the word box. Choose a preposition to complete each sentence.

under	before	beside	by
inside	during	about	between
without	through	from	on

1. The train must go \_\_\_\_\_ the tunnel.
2. The ladder is \_\_\_\_\_ the garage.
3. It was very dark \_\_\_\_\_ the theater.
4. You have a letter \_\_\_\_\_ your friend in Michigan.
5. I like my hamburgers \_\_\_\_\_ cheese.
6. It rained heavily \_\_\_\_\_ the concert.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ the holidays, we had many people visit us.
8. I think you left your watch \_\_\_\_\_ the dresser.
9. In class, Marline sits \_\_\_\_\_ Jake and Tony.
10. This book is \_\_\_\_\_ two boys who visit Australia.
11. It was so cold when we camped that we slept \_\_\_\_\_ three blankets.
12. Katarina lives \_\_\_\_\_ my friend's apartment on Baker Street.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# CLUE ME IN

How many prepositions can you find in this word search puzzle? The words in the word box will help you. Good luck!



IN	UP	BELOW	BEHIND
OUT	OUTSIDE	TO	OVER
ON	DOWN	AT	UNDER
OFF	ABOVE	FROM	BETWEEN
INSIDE	BY	AROUND	THROUGH

# QUESTIONING

When someone asks a question, she is looking for information. When we read, there are certain words that signal a question has been asked. Here's a list of question words:

*Who* asks, *What person?*

*Who* is going with me?

*Where* asks, *What place?*

*Where* are you going?

*What* asks about a *place* or a *thing*.

*What* is the title of that book?

*When* asks about *time*.

*When* does the movie start?

*Why* asks, *What is the reason?*

*Why* do we have to leave now?

*How* asks, *In what way?*

*How* did you make that design?

Some other question words are *can*, *did*, and *will*.

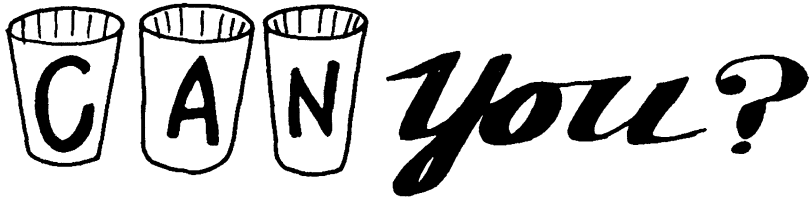
Remember, question words always end with a question mark. Questions signal that an answer is required.

Choose a question word to complete each question.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is the sun so hot?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ is your teacher this year?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ can I help you?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ did you put your jacket?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is your name?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ should we leave for the party?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ you see that movie?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you go with me?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Sarah come with us?



Name \_\_\_\_\_



Use one of these question words to correctly complete each sentence:

**Can      Did      Will**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you go home with me?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ you see my book?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you help me?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you put this away for me?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ I go to the store?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you have a good time?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ my mother call me?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you see the flag?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ you sit down, please?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ I watch TV?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ you play with me today?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ I do a good job?
13. \_\_\_\_\_ you put the paper in your book?
14. \_\_\_\_\_ I help you?
15. \_\_\_\_\_ you get a card in the mail?

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# THINK CLEARLY

You'll have to think clearly to use the question words on this page. Complete each sentence with one of the question words below.

**Can      Did      Will**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you draw very well?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ you do any magic tricks?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you please help me work this problem?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you know that woman at the counter?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you wait until I'm through?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you remember to stop at the corner?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ I go across the street to visit?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ you put this up for me, please?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ you find your shoes?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ you see the flag waving?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ I go to the store for you?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Tracy give you the paper?

# So Many Questions

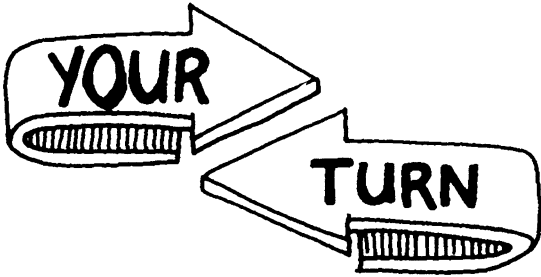
Decide whether each phrase below tells you:

**Who      What      When      Where**

Write your answers on the lines.

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. _____ in the store     | 15. _____ in the chair  |
| 2. _____ the box          | 16. _____ soon          |
| 3. _____ on the table     | 17. _____ at school     |
| 4. _____ my coach         | 18. _____ the custodian |
| 5. _____ at the bank      | 19. _____ today         |
| 6. _____ Monday           | 20. _____ at my house   |
| 7. _____ the leader       | 21. _____ Marty         |
| 8. _____ at the lake      | 22. _____ a book        |
| 9. _____ the red ball     | 23. _____ Mr. Jackson   |
| 10. _____ now             | 24. _____ one day       |
| 11. _____ the baby        | 25. _____ a doll        |
| 12. _____ a bird          | 26. _____ the city      |
| 13. _____ under the stove | 27. _____ the driver    |
| 14. _____ the patrol      | 28. _____ on the roof   |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

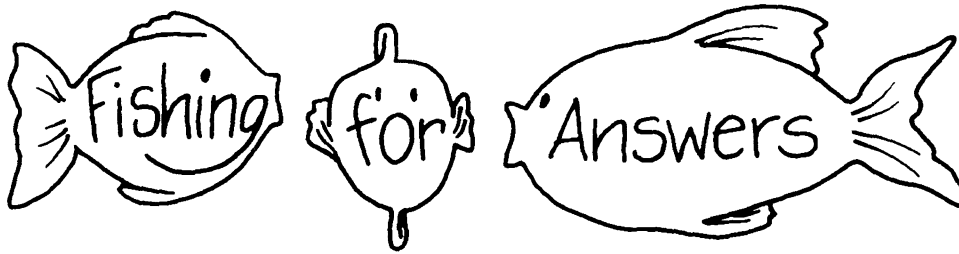


Take your turn showing what each phrase tells. Choose one of these words and write it on the line.

**Who      What      When      Where**

- |           |                      |           |                  |
|-----------|----------------------|-----------|------------------|
| 1. _____  | the kitten           | 13. _____ | my cousin        |
| 2. _____  | soon                 | 14. _____ | under the bed    |
| 3. _____  | at the grocery store | 15. _____ | my stepmom       |
| 4. _____  | during vacation      | 16. _____ | my uncle         |
| 5. _____  | often                | 17. _____ | the stove        |
| 6. _____  | Mr. Winston          | 18. _____ | in the tree      |
| 7. _____  | in the west          | 19. _____ | the piano        |
| 8. _____  | at the beach         | 20. _____ | over the rainbow |
| 9. _____  | Dr. Andrews          | 21. _____ | the first grader |
| 10. _____ | this fall            | 22. _____ | in the sky       |
| 11. _____ | the laundry          | 23. _____ | this afternoon   |
| 12. _____ | Aunt Sue             | 24. _____ | a baseball glove |

Name \_\_\_\_\_



Someone is always fishing for answers to questions. Help me figure out what all these questions ask. Write each phrase under the correct question.

on the TV	the bus driver	his teacher	our friend
in a few days	the bird	the fire fighter	on the table
my little dog	next week	this month	last year
in the box	the chair	on the radio	in an hour
Mom	my game	the football	in the car

Who	What	When	Where

# Question Quest

It's an adventure in questioning! Complete each question below by writing one of these question words in each blank.

**What      When      Where**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is my pencil?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ did you go?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ do you sit in class?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is your name?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ do you go for music lessons?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ do you live?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ did you bring to school today?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ can we play checkers?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ game do you like best?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ did you go to bed last night?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ did you go last Saturday afternoon?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ can you meet me on the playground?
13. \_\_\_\_\_ is your dog's name?
14. \_\_\_\_\_ can we have our party?

# Say That Again?

The question word *how* asks *In what way?* The question word *why* asks *What is the reason?* Read each question below. Decide if the question is asking *how* or *why*. Write *How* or *Why* on the line.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ did you ask where I live?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ do you know we're going to the park?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ will Grandma get here?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ are all of those people waiting in line?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ do you need to see my homework?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ will they get this finished by noon?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ does the Earth rotate on its axis?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ did Mick's family move away?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ do you spell your middle name?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is your friend Bobbi feeling?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ don't you go to your room to study?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ didn't you get to see the movie?

# QUESTIONS! QUESTIONS!

Questions, questions, so many questions! Each question below asks either *why* or *how*. Read each question and write *How* or *Why* in the blank.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ are you feeling today?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ did Teresa go to the library today?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ did the dinosaurs become extinct?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ do I find the answer?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is Jamie laughing?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ did you find out about the schedule?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ does Jon think he won't be able to go?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ did the animals get so excited?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ did you earn the money to buy your bike?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ can someone learn to paint as well as you?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ is Christopher always late for school?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ do you need to leave early today?



# Ask Me More

*How* and *why* are question words. *How* asks *In what way?* *Why* asks *what reason* something happens. Read the phrases below. Then, tell whether the phrase is answering *how* or *why*.

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. _____ faster and faster    | 13. _____ so we could eat it |
| 2. _____ very carefully       | 14. _____ with a ruler       |
| 3. _____ since we had to wait | 15. _____ spoke softly       |
| 4. _____ drove slowly         | 16. _____ to see the dogs    |
| 5. _____ worked steadily      | 17. _____ to hear the singer |
| 6. _____ because of the rain  | 18. _____ turned slowly      |
| 7. _____ to open the closet   | 19. _____ it was too hot     |
| 8. _____ walked quickly       | 20. _____ because he fell    |
| 9. _____ in order to see it   | 21. _____ with great care    |
| 10. _____ sitting alone       | 22. _____ with a knife       |
| 11. _____ too slowly          | 23. _____ to see the play    |
| 12. _____ in order to finish  | 24. _____ since you asked    |

Name \_\_\_\_\_



You can hit one over the fence when you put question words in the sentences below. Use one of these words to complete each sentence.

**What      Why      How**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ are you today?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ is your telephone number?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ aren't you going to the ball game?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is your grandmother feeling?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ can you enter the art contest?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ do we celebrate New Year's Day?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ time do you go to lunch?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ does a spider spin such a complex web?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ do you think our dog got out of the pen?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ does a new computer cost?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ did you say?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ do you have to go so soon?

# Why? How?

Questions are asked in order to get an answer. Some question words are *who*, *what*, *where*, *when*, *why*, and *how*.

The word *how* asks, "In what way?"

*How* do I put this together? *In what way* do I put this together?

The word *why* asks, "What is the reason?"

*Why* did you eat all the crackers? *What is the reason* you ate all the crackers?

The phrases below answer questions that begin with either *how* or *why*. Read each phrase and figure out the question it answers. Then, write *how* or *why* in the blank.

- |                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. _____ to see my teacher      | 12. _____ because it is sharp    |
| 2. _____ because of the storm   | 13. _____ with great care        |
| 3. _____ jumped quickly         | 14. _____ touching gently        |
| 4. _____ rushed along           | 15. _____ to find my books       |
| 5. _____ to take a nap          | 16. _____ smiling widely         |
| 6. _____ talking loudly         | 17. _____ since it rained        |
| 7. _____ to get it fixed        | 18. _____ with some glue         |
| 8. _____ because my arm hurts   | 19. _____ to buy milk            |
| 9. _____ in order to see better | 20. _____ handled carefully      |
| 10. _____ by myself             | 21. _____ kicked and screamed    |
| 11. _____ due to the snow       | 22. _____ because it was too big |

# A Turn Around

You'll do a complete turn around on these sentences! Read each sentence. Then, write a question that uses the sentence as the answer.

Example: Randy walked all the way home.  
How did Randy get home?

1. Mr. Gifford complained about the food in the restaurant.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Mikhail didn't do his homework because he was sick.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. When the lake freezes, we can go ice skating.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Darren won the art contest sponsored by the library.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. We saw three plays when we visited New York City.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. I'll meet you in the gym at 9:00.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Chocolate is my favorite kind of ice cream.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. The new set of encyclopedias came last week.

\_\_\_\_\_

# What's Your Question?

Read each sentence. Write a question that uses the sentence as the answer.

1. I left because the taxi was waiting.

---

2. We got four inches of snow during the night.

---

3. My dad works as a newspaper reporter.

---

4. We went to Washington, D.C., last weekend.

---

5. My birthday is January 7th.

---

6. Uncle Greg lives in Germany.

---

7. Thirteen families live in our apartment building.

---

8. We checked out a book on amphibians.

---

# Prefixes & Suffixes

A *prefix* is a word part that is added to the beginning of a base word. Here are some examples of prefixes:

over-	overlooked	skipped over
un-	uncomfortable	not comfortable
dis-	disagree	not agreeable
in-	incorrect	not correct
non-	nonreturnable	can't return
im-	impolite	not polite

A *suffix* is a word part that is added to the end of a base word. Here are some examples of suffixes:

-ing	talking	to talk
-ed	pushed	to have pushed something
-er	waiter	someone who waits on tables
-ist	botanist	someone who studies plants
-less	worthless	not worth any money

Read each sentence. Underline the word with a prefix or suffix in each one.

1. Allison always overdid it when she exercised.
2. My cat was walking on the fence.
3. The story had a timeless message about friendship.
4. Brent indirectly asked Erin to the dance.
5. We opened the box.
6. The scientist was happy with the results of the experiment.

# Overworked

A prefix is a word part added to the beginning of a base word. The prefix *over-* means *above* or *excessive*. Read each word below and then find its definition. Be sure not to “overwork” yourself!

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| 1. ____ overeat     | A. above you                           |
| 2. ____ overcast    | B. too ripe                            |
| 3. ____ overhead    | C. cook too long                       |
| 4. ____ overripe    | D. eat too much                        |
| 5. ____ overdo      | E. repair something so it works better |
| 6. ____ overhaul    | F. make someone pay too much           |
| 7. ____ overboard   | G. do too much                         |
| 8. ____ overgrown   | H. over the side of a boat             |
| 9. ____ overcook    | I. skip over or miss                   |
| 10. ____ overcharge | J. heavy clouds in the sky             |
| 11. ____ overflow   | K. grown too big                       |
| 12. ____ overlook   | L. go over a boundary                  |

# Get a Clue

A prefix is a word part you add to the beginning of a base word. By knowing what the prefix means, you can guess the meaning of the word. Look at the prefixes *un-* and *dis-*. The prefix *un-* means *not*. The prefix *dis-* means *the opposite of*.

Read each word on the left. Find the definition of the word and write the letter in the blank.

- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. ____ uncomfortable | A. to not agree        |
| 2. ____ unacceptable  | B. to not continue     |
| 3. ____ disagree      | C. not hurt            |
| 4. ____ undressed     | D. to lose color       |
| 5. ____ disconnected  | E. not known           |
| 6. ____ discontinue   | F. not comfortable     |
| 7. ____ undefeated    | G. not connected       |
| 8. ____ unharmed      | H. not defeated        |
| 9. ____ discolored    | I. not acceptable      |
| 10. ____ unknown      | J. not wearing clothes |

Read each word below. Write each word part under the correct column.

Word	Prefix	Base Word
unclean		
disagree		
unpleasant		



Name \_\_\_\_\_

# NOT!

The prefix *un-* means *not*. The prefix *dis-* means *the opposite of*. Use these two prefixes to figure out the meaning of each word listed. Write the letter of the correct definition in the blank.

- |                      |                                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. ____ unconscious  | A. to bring shame to            |
| 2. ____ unclean      | B. not feeling comfortable      |
| 3. ____ unbroken     | C. to send away                 |
| 4. ____ unaware      | D. not alert                    |
| 5. ____ uncertain    | E. to reveal                    |
| 6. ____ uncivil      | F. not noticing                 |
| 7. ____ uneasy       | G. to stain                     |
| 8. ____ disclose     | H. not faithful                 |
| 9. ____ discolor     | I. dirty                        |
| 10. ____ disapproved | J. not accepted as satisfactory |
| 11. ____ disgrace    | K. rude or impolite             |
| 12. ____ dishonest   | L. not sure                     |
| 13. ____ dismiss     | M. not trustworthy              |
| 14. ____ disloyal    | N. not damaged                  |

# In the Know

Be in the know when you learn about the prefix *in-*. The prefix *in-* means *not*. Read each word on the left. Then, find a definition on the right to match. Write the letter of the definition on the line.

- |                       |                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. ____ inappropriate | A. not able to be heard      |
| 2. ____ incorrect     | B. not fair or just          |
| 3. ____ insight       | C. casual; without formality |
| 4. ____ incapable     | D. not exact                 |
| 5. ____ inaccurate    | E. not appreciative of       |
| 6. ____ inactive      | F. not right                 |
| 7. ____ inaudible     | G. not paying attention      |
| 8. ____ inattentive   | H. not often                 |
| 9. ____ informal      | I. not able to do something  |
| 10. ____ infrequent   | J. not suitable              |
| 11. ____ injustice    | K. idle; not active          |
| 12. ____ ingratitude  | L. knowing without seeing    |

# More Prefixes

Here are three prefixes with similar meanings.

*non-* means *not* or *lack of*  
*in-* means *not*  
*im-* means *not*

Read each word below. Then, find a definition to match the meaning of the word. Write your answers in the blanks.

- |                      |                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. ____ nondescript  | A. not fully grown or ripe  |
| 2. ____ immaculate   | B. not easy to describe     |
| 3. ____ nonflammable | C. not straight             |
| 4. ____ nonsense     | D. lacking sense            |
| 5. ____ immature     | E. not clean                |
| 6. ____ inactive     | F. won't catch fire easily  |
| 7. ____ indirect     | G. idle                     |
| 8. ____ impede       | H. to interfere with action |
| 9. ____ indifferent  | I. not noticing             |
| 10. ____ impure      | J. spotlessly clean         |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Prefix Power

Look at the base words listed below. The prefixes are missing. Add one of these prefixes to each word and find it in the puzzle.

in-    im-    un-    en-    re-    dis-

secure	obey	heat	fold
able	snap	test	mature
pure	copy	joy	box
lace	roll	hire	date

I	N	S	E	C	U	R	E	O	P	T	R	E	C
Y	R	O	X	R	N	E	U	N	R	I	T	D	R
P	E	E	E	U	B	A	N	E	E	R	E	I	I
E	H	N	P	O	O	X	T	R	D	E	I	S	O
N	E	R	R	A	X	B	L	E	A	R	E	A	A
R	A	E	E	R	T	H	T	E	T	E	P	B	N
O	T	E	T	S	R	E	I	R	E	F	O	L	D
L	R	E	E	S	E	T	M	E	T	E	T	E	T
L	R	U	S	R	W	I	M	H	O	P	R	E	L
E	E	N	T	O	L	U	A	E	N	J	O	Y	B
T	H	E	L	O	P	E	T	A	E	U	R	Y	R
D	I	S	O	B	E	Y	U	U	N	S	N	A	P
E	R	I	P	R	E	T	R	Z	E	R	R	E	T
E	E	I	M	P	U	R	E	R	E	O	V	O	T
R	E	C	O	P	Y	F	O	U	N	L	A	C	E

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Follow the Rules

Here's a spelling rule to help you add *-ing* to words.

If a word has a C-V-C pattern, double the final consonant and add *-ing*.

Practice your new rule with these words.

1. dig \_\_\_\_\_

2. skid \_\_\_\_\_

3. tap \_\_\_\_\_

4. pat \_\_\_\_\_

5. nap \_\_\_\_\_

6. snap \_\_\_\_\_

7. plan \_\_\_\_\_

8. jab \_\_\_\_\_

9. chat \_\_\_\_\_

10. skip \_\_\_\_\_

11. quit \_\_\_\_\_

12. sob \_\_\_\_\_

13. nod \_\_\_\_\_

14. spit \_\_\_\_\_

15. hog \_\_\_\_\_

16. pop \_\_\_\_\_

17. sit \_\_\_\_\_

18. nip \_\_\_\_\_

19. slip \_\_\_\_\_

20. grin \_\_\_\_\_

21. fib \_\_\_\_\_

22. hem \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# No Trouble

It's no trouble when you remember the rule! If the word has a C-V-C pattern, double the final consonant before you add *-ing*.

1. clip \_\_\_\_\_

2. fit \_\_\_\_\_

3. bat \_\_\_\_\_

4. flag \_\_\_\_\_

5. plan \_\_\_\_\_

6. pin \_\_\_\_\_

7. sob \_\_\_\_\_

8. tan \_\_\_\_\_

9. dig \_\_\_\_\_

10. pat \_\_\_\_\_

11. bug \_\_\_\_\_

12. lag \_\_\_\_\_

13. stop \_\_\_\_\_

14. hop \_\_\_\_\_

15. sit \_\_\_\_\_

16. flop \_\_\_\_\_

17. cut \_\_\_\_\_

18. spin \_\_\_\_\_

19. chip \_\_\_\_\_

20. hit \_\_\_\_\_

21. chop \_\_\_\_\_

22. put \_\_\_\_\_

23. span \_\_\_\_\_

24. flip \_\_\_\_\_

# Whoa!

Time to round up those suffixes! Read each sentence and then read the word in parentheses. Follow the rule to add *-ing*.

1. Andy likes \_\_\_\_\_ his dog. (pet)
2. Matthew is \_\_\_\_\_ in the yard. (dig)
3. Yoland is going \_\_\_\_\_ with Mike. (swim)
4. Jasmine is \_\_\_\_\_ about something! (grin)
5. James goes \_\_\_\_\_ each morning. (jog)
6. Mrs. Johnson is \_\_\_\_\_ papers on the floor. (drop)
7. Mrs. Mays went \_\_\_\_\_ for a gift. (shop)
8. Mr. Stailey is \_\_\_\_\_ at us. (nod)
9. Lee is \_\_\_\_\_ wood for the fire. (chop)
10. Mom is \_\_\_\_\_ at the store. (stop)
11. The man is \_\_\_\_\_ the fly. (swat)
12. Mrs. Hyde is \_\_\_\_\_ her students. (hug)
13. My friend is \_\_\_\_\_ the rope with me. (tug)
14. Stop \_\_\_\_\_ me! (bug)

# Rules & -ing

Read each sentence and then read the word in parentheses. Follow the rule to add *-ing*.

1. The worker is \_\_\_\_\_ the limb on the tree. (tug)
2. Renee is \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen floor. (scrub)
3. Someone is \_\_\_\_\_ in this room! (hum)
4. Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ the door for me? (shut)
5. Our school is \_\_\_\_\_ a new coat of paint. (get)
6. At the fall carnival, I liked \_\_\_\_\_ for apples. (bob)
7. My friend is \_\_\_\_\_ next to the tall boy. (sit)
8. The group will be \_\_\_\_\_ flags on the bulletin board. (pin)
9. We are \_\_\_\_\_ up the bulbs for next year. (dig)
10. Emily heard Jason \_\_\_\_\_ at the door. (tap)
11. Randy is \_\_\_\_\_ the ladder against the building. (prop)
12. The house is so old that it's \_\_\_\_\_. (rot)



Name \_\_\_\_\_

# V-C-Silent E Words

Add the suffix *-ing* correctly to each word below. If the word has a V-C-silent E pattern, drop the "e" before you add *-ing*. The first one is done for you.

- |          |                |           |       |
|----------|----------------|-----------|-------|
| 1. skate | <u>skating</u> | 12. hope  | _____ |
| 2. save  | _____          | 13. pose  | _____ |
| 3. wipe  | _____          | 14. close | _____ |
| 4. cave  | _____          | 15. joke  | _____ |
| 5. time  | _____          | 16. phone | _____ |
| 6. wire  | _____          | 17. fade  | _____ |
| 7. bite  | _____          | 18. trace | _____ |
| 8. tune  | _____          | 19. grade | _____ |
| 9. tame  | _____          | 20. page  | _____ |
| 10. take | _____          | 21. brake | _____ |
| 11. tape | _____          | 22. name  | _____ |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Proud as a Peacock

Show off your stuff as you follow the rules to add the suffix *-ing* to words. Some of the words below are C-V-C pattern words and some of the words are V-C-silent E words. Use the correct rule to add *-ing* to each word.

1. plan \_\_\_\_\_

12. paste \_\_\_\_\_

2. drape \_\_\_\_\_

13. hop \_\_\_\_\_

3. chase \_\_\_\_\_

14. skip \_\_\_\_\_

4. shape \_\_\_\_\_

15. wade \_\_\_\_\_

5. map \_\_\_\_\_

16. trap \_\_\_\_\_

6. wrap \_\_\_\_\_

17. tan \_\_\_\_\_

7. save \_\_\_\_\_

18. shake \_\_\_\_\_

8. get \_\_\_\_\_

19. grab \_\_\_\_\_

9. wave \_\_\_\_\_

20. pad \_\_\_\_\_

10. slice \_\_\_\_\_

21. fan \_\_\_\_\_

11. hike \_\_\_\_\_

22. take \_\_\_\_\_

# Words with -ing

Follow the rule to add *-ing* to each word in parentheses.

1. I am \_\_\_\_\_ your papers together for you. (clip)
2. I'll bet you're \_\_\_\_\_ to go on the trip. (hope)
3. Eric is \_\_\_\_\_ on the west side of town now. (live)
4. Where will you be \_\_\_\_\_ at the play? (sit)
5. We'll be \_\_\_\_\_ the doors when the movie begins. (shut)
6. All students will be \_\_\_\_\_ for a picture at noon. (pose)
7. The fair workers will be \_\_\_\_\_ off the arena. (rope)
8. Why are you \_\_\_\_\_ so big? (grin)
9. The mine is \_\_\_\_\_ in! (cave)
10. I am \_\_\_\_\_ money for my education. (save)
11. When you're \_\_\_\_\_ the clay, be gentle with it. (shape)
12. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ to see my grandparents in June. (plan)

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# C-V-C Endings

Read each word below. Each word is a C-V-C word. Follow the rule to add the suffix *-ed* to each word.

If a word has a C-V-C pattern, double the final consonant before adding *-ed*.

1. knit \_\_\_\_\_

14. pat \_\_\_\_\_

2. tip \_\_\_\_\_

15. chat \_\_\_\_\_

3. hem \_\_\_\_\_

16. fan \_\_\_\_\_

4. clip \_\_\_\_\_

17. top \_\_\_\_\_

5. tap \_\_\_\_\_

18. rot \_\_\_\_\_

6. bat \_\_\_\_\_

19. flip \_\_\_\_\_

7. lag \_\_\_\_\_

20. chop \_\_\_\_\_

8. plan \_\_\_\_\_

21. bob \_\_\_\_\_

9. prop \_\_\_\_\_

22. clap \_\_\_\_\_

10. rub \_\_\_\_\_

23. hug \_\_\_\_\_

11. shop \_\_\_\_\_

24. jog \_\_\_\_\_

12. chip \_\_\_\_\_

25. nod \_\_\_\_\_

13. grab \_\_\_\_\_

26. trap \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Add-ed

Put these words into the past by adding the suffix *-ed*.

1. spot \_\_\_\_\_

2. sip \_\_\_\_\_

3. man \_\_\_\_\_

4. tip \_\_\_\_\_

5. cap \_\_\_\_\_

6. shop \_\_\_\_\_

7. flag \_\_\_\_\_

8. fan \_\_\_\_\_

9. bat \_\_\_\_\_

10. ship \_\_\_\_\_

11. rub \_\_\_\_\_

12. pat \_\_\_\_\_

13. bag \_\_\_\_\_

14. chip \_\_\_\_\_

15. step \_\_\_\_\_

16. stop \_\_\_\_\_

17. ram \_\_\_\_\_

18. flop \_\_\_\_\_

19. drop \_\_\_\_\_

20. tab \_\_\_\_\_

21. clip \_\_\_\_\_

22. tug \_\_\_\_\_

23. log \_\_\_\_\_

24. trip \_\_\_\_\_

# More Rules

To add the suffix *-ed* to a word, you need to know the rules. Read each rule below.

If a word has a C-V-C pattern, double the final consonant before adding *-ed*.

If a word has a V-C-silent E pattern, drop the “e” before adding *-ed*.

If a word ends in two or more consonants, just add *-ed*.

Now, use these rules to add the suffix *-ed* to each word below.

1. hope \_\_\_\_\_

12. smile \_\_\_\_\_

2. jump \_\_\_\_\_

13. clip \_\_\_\_\_

3. tune \_\_\_\_\_

14. stamp \_\_\_\_\_

4. pad \_\_\_\_\_

15. dress \_\_\_\_\_

5. tame \_\_\_\_\_

16. pop \_\_\_\_\_

6. blame \_\_\_\_\_

17. chop \_\_\_\_\_

7. design \_\_\_\_\_

18. talk \_\_\_\_\_

8. skim \_\_\_\_\_

19. shout \_\_\_\_\_

9. climb \_\_\_\_\_

20. prop \_\_\_\_\_

10. tug \_\_\_\_\_

21. plan \_\_\_\_\_

11. bake \_\_\_\_\_

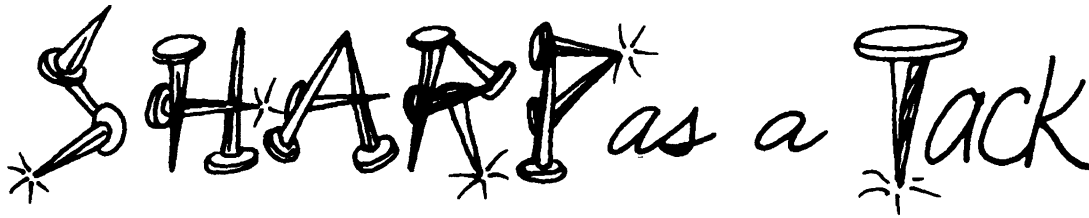
22. pat \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

# Word *magic*

Work your magic on these words. Read each word in the box. Then, add the suffix listed and write the new words in the chart.

	-ing	-ed
1. close		
2. care		
3. pick		
4. drop		
5. crack		
6. chime		
7. press		
8. flip		
9. trap		
10. frame		



Sharpen your skills as you add suffixes to words below. Read each word in parentheses. Add *-ed* or *-ing* to each word to make the sentence correct.

1. Ramon \_\_\_\_\_ his coat to go outside. (zip)
2. I saw Lee Linj \_\_\_\_\_ in the park near my home. (slide)
3. The circus clowns \_\_\_\_\_ on the trampoline. (jump)
4. Hosea and Suzanna are \_\_\_\_\_ a news report on the election. (write)
5. The man was \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of packages. (carry)
6. Before our holiday, we'll be \_\_\_\_\_ a party for Taylor. (have)
7. Last year my friend \_\_\_\_\_ to another state. (move)
8. Yesterday Mr. Abbott \_\_\_\_\_ to our class about pollution. (talk)
9. Our family is \_\_\_\_\_ to Yellowstone Park this summer. (travel)
10. When you paint, be careful \_\_\_\_\_ your colors. (mix)
11. Aunt Shelley is \_\_\_\_\_ a big dinner for the special occasion. (cook)
12. Are you \_\_\_\_\_ to come to the track meet on Friday? (plan)



# Suffix Sense

Endings of words are called *suffixes*. Add one of the suffixes in the box to each word in parentheses so it makes sense in the sentence.

-ing	-ed	-s	-es
------	-----	----	-----

1. John is \_\_\_\_\_ to the store. (walk)
2. The train is \_\_\_\_\_ the station right now! (pass)
3. Grandma \_\_\_\_\_ the twins for school. (dress)
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ the leaves by the back fence. (pile)
5. After supper, Sarah \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes. (wash)
6. The small boy is \_\_\_\_\_ in the playground. (swing)
7. I am \_\_\_\_\_ a good book on snakes. (read)
8. Jody is \_\_\_\_\_ at Chad. (look)
9. My teacher \_\_\_\_\_ to me yesterday. (talk)
10. Tonight we are \_\_\_\_\_ a ball game. (play)
11. Are you \_\_\_\_\_ to the play tomorrow? (go)
12. Tyler is \_\_\_\_\_ a new watch. (wear)
13. Our family \_\_\_\_\_ a cabin at the beach. (rent)
14. Last year I \_\_\_\_\_ mowing lawns. (work)

# SUFFIX RULES

Look at the words in parentheses. Add a suffix to each of these words to make sense in each sentence below. Use the suffixes *-ing*, *-ed*, *-s*, and *-es*.

1. Kelly is \_\_\_\_\_ to the store for Dad. (go)
2. The teller \_\_\_\_\_ for the man to find his wallet. (wait)
3. Terry \_\_\_\_\_ in the pond near his home. (fish)
4. The men \_\_\_\_\_ the park quickly. (rake)
5. Who \_\_\_\_\_ the car parked in front of the store? (own)
6. The judge made a \_\_\_\_\_ on the case this evening. (rule)
7. Laurence faithfully \_\_\_\_\_ his dog's coat. (brush)
8. The baby is \_\_\_\_\_ in the cradle by the fireplace. (sleep)
9. We watched the performers as they \_\_\_\_\_ on the ice. (skate)
10. The chimes will be \_\_\_\_\_ at noon each day. (ring)
11. I saw you \_\_\_\_\_ up some books at the library yesterday. (pick)
12. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers in the vase. (arrange)

# Zoom In

Zoom into action by learning about the suffixes *-er* and *-or*. Both of these suffixes mean *someone who*. For example, you can change the word *sing* to mean *someone who sings* by adding the suffix *-er* to make the word *singer*.

Read each phrase below. Add *-er* or *-or* to the underlined word. The first one is done for you.

1. someone who sings singer
2. someone who sails \_\_\_\_\_
3. someone who teaches \_\_\_\_\_
4. someone who farms \_\_\_\_\_
5. someone who marches \_\_\_\_\_
6. someone who plays \_\_\_\_\_
7. someone who bakes \_\_\_\_\_
8. someone who acts \_\_\_\_\_
9. someone who helps \_\_\_\_\_
10. someone who climbs \_\_\_\_\_
11. someone who banks \_\_\_\_\_
12. someone who programs \_\_\_\_\_

# Who Does It?

Read the words on the left. Each word has a suffix at the end of the word. Suffixes are endings that change the meaning of the base words. The base words on this page have *-ist* or *-or* suffixes.

*-ist* means *someone who*

*-or* means *the person or thing doing the action*

Example: A botanist is a person who works in botany.

Read the words below. Write the letters of the definitions in front of the words they describe.

1. \_\_\_\_ scientist

A. someone who does therapy

2. \_\_\_\_ actor

B. someone who writes

3. \_\_\_\_ biologist

C. someone who sails

4. \_\_\_\_ artist

D. someone who does science experiments

5. \_\_\_\_ geologist

E. someone who does art

6. \_\_\_\_ therapist

F. someone who works with medicines

7. \_\_\_\_ sailor

G. someone who flies

8. \_\_\_\_ aviator

H. someone who acts

9. \_\_\_\_ journalist

I. someone who studies rocks

10. \_\_\_\_ pharmacist

J. someone who works in biology

# Make It Correct

Choose one of these suffixes to make each word complete: *-less* or *-able*. The suffix *-less* means *without*. The suffix *-able* means *with* or *able to*. Read each definition and choose the suffix that makes the definition correct.

1. break	able to break	_____
2. comfort	with comfort	_____
3. reason	with reason	_____
4. pain	without pain	_____
5. doubt	without doubt	_____
6. life	without life	_____
7. clean	able to clean	_____
8. home	without a home	_____
9. match	without a match	_____
10. fault	without fault	_____
11. trace	able to trace	_____
12. child	without children	_____
13. sleep	without sleep	_____
14. refill	able to refill	_____
15. move	able to move	_____
16. star	without stars	_____
17. depend	able to depend on	_____
18. wash	able to wash	_____
19. wear	able to wear	_____
20. expand	able to expand	_____



## Nouns — Pretest

Read each list of words and circle the nouns.

doll	tree	write
home	sing	clean
finger	pencil	hands

Read each sentence and underline the nouns. Then, put a **P** for *person*, a **PL** for *place*, or **T** for *thing* above each noun.

1. The rider shouted for the horse to slow down.
2. The dancer had on a black suit and a top hat.
3. In the park yesterday, a man played the guitar while a woman sang.

Use one of these nouns in each sentence.

appointment	camera	mechanic	picture
-------------	--------	----------	---------

4. The \_\_\_\_\_ fixed our car within the hour.
5. Your \_\_\_\_\_ takes such good photographs!
6. This \_\_\_\_\_ is not clear enough to see.
7. I have a dental \_\_\_\_\_ on Tuesday.

Think of a noun to replace the word in bold print in each sentence. Write your word in the blank.

8. We will have to delay the **trip** for a while. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I have finished the **puzzle**. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The teacher needs our **help** today. \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

## Nouns — Pretest, *continued*

Write a proper noun in each blank.

11. She wrote a letter to \_\_\_\_\_.
12. My family traveled to \_\_\_\_\_.
13. I live in the city of \_\_\_\_\_.
14. My teacher's name is \_\_\_\_\_.

Circle each common noun. Underline the proper nouns and give them capital letters.

town

sarah

uncle jake

colorado river

england

shoes

friend

new york

school



## Nouns — Posttest

Write a plural noun to go with each verb.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ fly.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ hop.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ bounce.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ watch.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ paint.

Read each sentence. Underline each noun that is a person. Circle each noun that is a thing. Make a box around each place.

6. The Lipowitz family went to the park with their visitors.
7. The news reporter told about the earthquake in Japan.
8. Uncle Mark flew to Canada on a huge airplane.

Choose a word from the box to complete each sentence.

suggestions	homework	essay	model
-------------	----------	-------	-------

9. Lana worked on her \_\_\_\_\_ for English class.
10. Ben didn't take any of his coach's \_\_\_\_\_ for improvement.
11. Young people need a good role \_\_\_\_\_ for positive living.
12. Anna's teacher gave her a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ last week.

Write a noun in the blank to replace the word in bold print in each sentence.

13. We picked the sour **fruit** from the tree. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Janice bought a new **dress** for the party. \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

## Nouns — Posttest, *continued*

Circle each common noun. Underline the proper nouns and give them capital letters.

pencil

australia

book

atlantic ocean

mrs. taylor

gloves

cat

travis

## Pronouns — Pretest

Circle the pronouns.

beneath	run	us	it	why	them
who	Zach	they	time	Kris	you
our	this	her	I	your	in
these	we	boy	cup	walk	me

Underline the pronouns in these sentences.

1. When our dog broke its leg we took it to the veterinarian.
2. He saw it when he turned the corner by her house.
3. She sent us to the store to get groceries for our supper.
4. They called him last night and told him about your accident.

Use a pronoun to describe each word or phrase below.

- |                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 5. the boy _____    | 8. Roberta _____          |
| 6. Jane and I _____ | 9. my class and I _____   |
| 7. the lake _____   | 10. the other group _____ |

Underline the correct pronoun in each sentence.

11. (We, Us) were looking forward to the movie.
12. (They, Them) played a good game of basketball.
13. (My cousin and I, My cousin and me) write letters to each other.
14. I gave (she, her) a book to share with (they, them).

## Pronouns — Posttest

Read each sentence and underline the pronouns.

1. Their parents let them go to the concert by themselves.
2. We need to get ourselves organized so we can get our homework done!
3. She told me to keep them inside if it rained.
4. I wish you could go with us on our vacation.
5. He helped them finish their project so they could leave.

Replace each word or phrase with a pronoun.

6. for Jake \_\_\_\_\_
7. the bear \_\_\_\_\_
8. Joe and Tim \_\_\_\_\_
9. You and I \_\_\_\_\_
10. from my neighbors \_\_\_\_\_
11. my sister \_\_\_\_\_

Underline the correct pronoun in each sentence.

12. (Me and Tom, Tom and I) rode our bikes to the park.
13. (Us, We) like to collect different types of rocks.
14. (They, Them) helped (my sister and me, my sister and I) fix the flat tire.
15. (My friend and me, My friend and I) went to see (his, him) championship game.
16. (James and I, James and me) are brothers, and (we, us) do lots of things together.

**Verbs — Pretest**

Circle each verb in the list.

laugh	leave	beside	cook
cough	sing	read	under
angry	run	pull	dance

Underline the verb in each sentence.

1. Rain clouds formed across the skies.
2. The children laughed at the funny clown.
3. Travis read the story last night.
4. The children clapped with delight.

Read each sentence. Name the tense it is written in (past, present, or future) on the line.

5. Tara sang. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Mr. Stoppel walked slowly. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Abby will run. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Billie is cleaning her room. \_\_\_\_\_

Choose the correct verb form to finish each sentence.

wrote	help	play	did
-------	------	------	-----

9. Mr. Greenberg will \_\_\_\_\_ unpack the boxes.
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ not have to come to the office on Tuesday.
11. The toddler \_\_\_\_\_ with alphabet blocks yesterday.
12. Kira \_\_\_\_\_ a wonderful story.

**Verbs — Posttest**

Underline the verb in each sentence.

1. The elephant drank an entire bucket of water.
2. Lina dropped the vase.
3. A gust of wind slammed the door shut.

Add a verb to finish each sentence.

4. The leaves \_\_\_\_\_ from the tree as the wind blew.
5. Mrs. Juarez \_\_\_\_\_ every other week.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ going to pick strawberries.

Choose the correct form of the helping verb in parentheses to finish each sentence.

7. The team (will, would) play, even if it rains.
8. Marcus (have, has) baked bread several times.
9. Who (was, were) using the oven?
10. Enrico and Meg (is, are) going to speak on the radio.

Rewrite each word in the tense indicated.

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 11. go (future) _____   | 15. play (present) _____ |
| 12. sing (past) _____   | 16. bat (future) _____   |
| 13. sit (present) _____ | 17. drink (past) _____   |
| 14. write (past) _____  | 18. find (present) _____ |

Name \_\_\_\_\_

## **Verbs — Posttest, *continued***

Read each sentence. Underline the verb that agrees with the subject.

19. Rob (lift, lifts) grocery bags all day.
20. My teacher (talk, talks) really loudly!
21. The grass (grows, grow) fast after it rains.
22. The meetings (begins, begin) on Friday morning.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

## Phrases and Sentences — Pretest

Choose a word from the box to complete each phrase.

forth	pencils	outside	over
-------	---------	---------	------

1. inside and \_\_\_\_\_
2. under and \_\_\_\_\_
3. back and \_\_\_\_\_
4. pens and \_\_\_\_\_

Read the two sentence parts. Match the ending of each sentence to the beginning of the sentence on the left.

- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 5. ____ My friend     | A. needs to be cut.    |
| 6. ____ The old truck | B. is on Main Street.  |
| 7. ____ Our house     | C. visited me in June. |
| 8. ____ The grass     | D. was falling apart.  |

Finish each sentence by adding a noun that fits.

9. Ana Maria ate some \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The students went to the \_\_\_\_\_ on Thursday.
11. The cat played with the \_\_\_\_\_.

Add a verb to complete each sentence.

12. The dog \_\_\_\_\_ to his food.
13. Joey \_\_\_\_\_ over the box.

Put these words in order so the sentence makes sense.

14. hard the Holly for studied test .

\_\_\_\_\_

15. didn't left have We paper any .

\_\_\_\_\_



## Phrases and Sentences — Posttest

Match the sentence parts on the right to the sentence beginnings on the left.

- |                   |                                  |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. ____ Max       | A. meets every Saturday morning. |
| 2. ____ We        | B. was interesting to hear.      |
| 3. ____ My dad    | C. works in a chemical plant.    |
| 4. ____ Our club  | D. is my uncle's name.           |
| 5. ____ The story | E. played checkers.              |

Add a noun to complete each sentence.

6. Keri opened the \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ fell off the shelf.
8. Mrs. Rodriguez put the \_\_\_\_\_ into the shopping cart.
9. We have many \_\_\_\_\_ in our classroom.

Add a verb to complete each sentence.

10. The kids \_\_\_\_\_ on the playground.
11. Emily \_\_\_\_\_ the glass.
12. The dog \_\_\_\_\_.

Put these words in order to make a sentence.

13. Darnell over dog to ran the .

\_\_\_\_\_

14. They Friday it happy were was .

\_\_\_\_\_

**Plurals — Pretest**

Read each sentence. Draw one line under each singular noun. Draw two lines under each plural noun

1. The men traveled to many cities on their trip.
2. For my birthday, I got a sweater, two games, and a book.
3. The women made a banner for the visitors to our city.

Make each noun plural.

- |                |                |                  |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 4. mouse _____ | 7. box _____   | 10. berry _____  |
| 5. day _____   | 8. dress _____ | 11. tooth _____  |
| 6. fly _____   | 9. ranch _____ | 12. pencil _____ |

Read each sentence. Make the word in parentheses plural. Write the new word on the line.

13. We had no \_\_\_\_\_ for the fireplace. (match)
14. My \_\_\_\_\_ are cold! (foot)
15. The \_\_\_\_\_ need to be trimmed. (bush)
16. The football player made some great \_\_\_\_\_! (pass)
17. Both \_\_\_\_\_ are planning to move in May. (family)
18. The \_\_\_\_\_ swam across the river. (duck)

Name \_\_\_\_\_

## Plurals — Posttest

Make each word plural.

- |                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. sky _____    | 5. goose _____     |
| 2. boss _____   | 6. half _____      |
| 3. street _____ | 7. key _____       |
| 4. foot _____   | 8. butterfly _____ |

Make the word in parentheses plural and write it in the blank to finish each sentence.

9. The \_\_\_\_\_ are in the cupboard. (glass)
10. Danita bought two \_\_\_\_\_ of bread at the store. (loaf)
11. Jesse uses many \_\_\_\_\_ when he paints. (brush)
12. When my aunt got married, we went to several \_\_\_\_\_. (party)

Read each list of words and circle the plural nouns. Some of the nouns are irregular.

foot	penny	ox
halves	flies	children
house	dreams	pliers
purses	teeth	dresses
copies	latches	crayon
leaves	mice	boys

## Adjectives — Pretest

Read each sentence. Underline the adjectives you find.

1. The tall, young man sat on the park bench under the shade tree.
2. Look at that frisky, little puppy chasing the yellow butterfly!
3. You'd better wear your warm coat and your red mittens, Toni!
4. Devon went to the big, new grocery store to get frozen peas and fresh fruit.

Use the correct form of the adjective in parentheses to finish each sentence.

5. That is the \_\_\_\_\_ animal I have ever seen. (strange)
6. You are the \_\_\_\_\_ person that I have ever known. (brave)
7. Tara's feet are much \_\_\_\_\_ than mine. (small)

Add an adjective to describe each noun.

8. \_\_\_\_\_ tiger
9. \_\_\_\_\_ building
10. \_\_\_\_\_ ball player
11. \_\_\_\_\_ book
12. \_\_\_\_\_ shirt

Name \_\_\_\_\_

## Adjectives — Posttest

Read each column of words. Underline the adjectives.

swift	dirty	wavering
ride	call	globe
careful	picture	broken
noisy	round	long
beautiful	pink	anxious
sweet	funny	rough

Add adjectives in the blanks to finish the sentences.

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ boat went across the \_\_\_\_\_ lake.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ kitten played with the \_\_\_\_\_ ball.
3. Suddenly, a \_\_\_\_\_ noise made the \_\_\_\_\_ dog jump!
4. We picked a bouquet of \_\_\_\_\_ roses and \_\_\_\_\_ lilies.

Use the correct form of the adjective in parentheses to finish each sentence.

5. Carlos is the \_\_\_\_\_ sleeper! (light)
6. Selina is the \_\_\_\_\_ girl in our class. (smart)
7. My friend is \_\_\_\_\_ than me. (old)
8. Our neighborhood is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ places in the city. (safe)

## Possessives — Pretest

Make each phrase singular possessive.

1. the coat of the officer \_\_\_\_\_
2. the book of my sister \_\_\_\_\_
3. the noise of the dog \_\_\_\_\_
4. the house of my friend \_\_\_\_\_

Make each phrase plural possessive.

5. the laughter of the children \_\_\_\_\_
6. the meetings of the organizations \_\_\_\_\_
7. the club of the boys \_\_\_\_\_
8. the uniforms of the players \_\_\_\_\_

Add an apostrophe in the correct place to show singular possessive nouns.

9. I searched the room for my pens cap.
10. Is this your friends book?

Add an apostrophe in the correct place to show plural possessive nouns.

11. The students club will be meeting at four o'clock today.
12. The football players uniforms were caked with mud.

## Possessives — Posttest

Make each phrase singular possessive.

1. the home of the girl \_\_\_\_\_
2. the room of the teacher \_\_\_\_\_
3. the lead of the pencil \_\_\_\_\_
4. the cover of the book \_\_\_\_\_

Make each phrase plural possessive.

5. the vote of the people \_\_\_\_\_
6. the voices of the women \_\_\_\_\_
7. the rooms of the boys \_\_\_\_\_
8. the cars of the drivers \_\_\_\_\_

Read each phrase and put an apostrophe in the correct place.

9. Many students projects were displayed in a special area of the auditorium.
10. My brothers bat was left outside all night.
11. The childrens parents are coming to the meeting today.
12. The police officers cars were parked outside the police station.

**Adverbs — Pretest**

Read each column of words. Underline the adverbs.

far	sometimes	water
today	next	down
use	always	said
loudly	frown	slowly
now	quickly	watch
smile	behind	by

Use the correct form of the adverb in parentheses to finish each sentence.

1. This test was much \_\_\_\_\_ than the other test we had. (hard)
2. This coat is less \_\_\_\_\_ than most coats in the store. (cost)
3. Marwan \_\_\_\_\_ hiked up the mountain. (brisk)
4. She yelled \_\_\_\_\_ than anyone at the ballgame. (loud)

Underline the adverbs in each sentence.

5. The turtle slowly crept toward the water.
6. Sometimes I like to watch the speed boats get ready for the races.
7. I see that you left your bike outside.
8. Bring the new books tomorrow.



## Adverbs — Posttest

Underline the adverbs in each sentence.

1. Taneesha nearly lost control of her bike in the rain yesterday.
2. When you finish reading this, you may go outside.
3. Julio threw the ball as hard as he could.
4. Ellen heard Sari cheerfully calling her dog.

Read each list of words. Circle the adverbs that tell you *how*. Underline the adverbs that tell you *when*. Put a box around the words that tell you *where*.

quickly	inside	soon	behind
then	early	here	there
loudly	next	far	carefully
today	softly	yesterday	ahead

Add an adverb to each sentence so it makes sense.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ I wrote a note to my mom.
6. The dancer \_\_\_\_\_ went across the room.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ I will graduate from high school.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ go to the kitchen and get me a glass of water, please.

## Negatives/Contractions — Pretest

Underline the negative word in each sentence.

1. The baby didn't cry all night.
2. I can't go home with you today.
3. Leeza does not know where Lincoln Park is located.
4. That boy is not my brother.
5. Nobody was home when we stopped by for a visit.
6. I have never seen a solar eclipse.

Write the negative contraction for each of the following words.

7. can \_\_\_\_\_
8. have \_\_\_\_\_
9. should \_\_\_\_\_
10. are \_\_\_\_\_
11. is \_\_\_\_\_
12. will \_\_\_\_\_

Rewrite each sentence using a negative contraction.

13. I can leave on the early bus tomorrow.

\_\_\_\_\_

14. Patricia will wait for me after school.

\_\_\_\_\_

**Negatives/Contractions — Posttest**

Circle the negative words.

never

nothing

someone

maybe

nobody

softly

soon

person

nowhere

no

won't

can't

before

aren't

couldn't

need

none

did

Underline the negative words in each sentence.

1. Carlos had never seen such a beautiful sunset.
2. There's nowhere to sit in the auditorium.
3. We can't be sure the bad weather isn't going to cause a tornado.
4. My dad doesn't understand why none of my friends have been to see me.
5. I never knew you couldn't buy tickets at the gate.

Rewrite each word as a negative contraction.

6. did \_\_\_\_\_

7. will \_\_\_\_\_

8. have \_\_\_\_\_

9. is \_\_\_\_\_

10. should \_\_\_\_\_

11. had \_\_\_\_\_

12. were \_\_\_\_\_

## Prepositions — Pretest

Circle each preposition.

by	in	blow
about	under	into
for	around	over
its	without	dusty
his	my	she
to	their	beneath

Complete each phrase using a preposition. Use a different preposition for each phrase.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ my book
2. \_\_\_\_\_ you
3. \_\_\_\_\_ a cover
4. \_\_\_\_\_ the chair
5. \_\_\_\_\_ the table
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the hill
7. \_\_\_\_\_ the house
8. \_\_\_\_\_ the clouds

Underline the correct preposition in each sentence.

9. I'll bring you the books to pack (in, on) the box.
10. Look (over, under) the table to see if your pencil fell.
11. Put the book cover (around, inside) your history book.
12. We slid (down, up) the mountain very fast!

## Prepositions — Posttest

Underline the prepositions in the following sentences.

1. Their dog went under the house to find the stick.
2. The ball went over the fence and rolled into the street.
3. Our cat climbed up the tree and sat on the limb.
4. I sat behind my best friend at the concert last night.

Use each preposition in a phrase.

5. by \_\_\_\_\_
6. under \_\_\_\_\_
7. inside \_\_\_\_\_
8. from \_\_\_\_\_
9. between \_\_\_\_\_
10. over \_\_\_\_\_
11. without \_\_\_\_\_
12. behind \_\_\_\_\_

Use a preposition to complete each sentence.

13. I hid the tickets \_\_\_\_\_ the book.
14. We drove \_\_\_\_\_ very rough roads when we went to the lake.
15. Let's go play \_\_\_\_\_ !
16. The rabbit ran \_\_\_\_\_ the bushes in our yard.

Name \_\_\_\_\_

## Questions — Pretest

Underline each question word.

why	where	while	what	wheel	whisper
I	when	you	the	who	my
our	how	did	can	your	will

Choose a question word and complete each sentence so it makes sense.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is your address?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ can't Jared go to the game?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ does your brother feel?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is your best friend?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you please help me with this problem?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ will you go on your vacation?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ did the dinosaurs disappear?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Daniel tie his own shoes?

Read each sentence. Then, write a question so the answer is the sentence.

9. We went to the ball game on Saturday.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. I broke my arm when I fell out of the tree.

\_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

## Questions — Posttest

Each phrase answers one of the questions in the box. Write the correct question words in the blanks.

who	what	where	why	when	how
-----	------	-------	-----	------	-----

- |                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. my dog _____             | 6. my best friend _____ |
| 2. because of the car _____ | 7. soon _____           |
| 3. in the room _____        | 8. very loudly _____    |
| 4. ran quickly _____        | 9. the plate _____      |
| 5. at my home _____         | 10. tomorrow _____      |

Write a question for each question word.

- |           |       |
|-----------|-------|
| 11. who   | _____ |
| 12. why   | _____ |
| 13. where | _____ |
| 14. when  | _____ |
| 15. how   | _____ |
| 16. what  | _____ |
| 17. can   | _____ |
| 18. did   | _____ |

Read these sentences. Write a question so the sentence is the answer.

19. Josh put the pencils in the drawer.

\_\_\_\_\_

20. Gia was late because she couldn't find her shoes.

\_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

## Prefixes/Suffixes — Pretest

Underline each word with a prefix.

baseball

goodness

wasteful

impossible

enclose

overdone

redo

unload

distaste

Circle each word with a suffix.

redraw

finishes

distrust

specialist

listened

actor

loving

careless

plumber

Add a prefix from the box to each word. Use each prefix only once.

en-  
re-

un-  
dis-

im-  
over-

1. price \_\_\_\_\_

4. write \_\_\_\_\_

2. mature \_\_\_\_\_

5. lock \_\_\_\_\_

3. courage \_\_\_\_\_

6. trust \_\_\_\_\_

Add a suffix from the box to each word. Write the new word on the line. Use each suffix only once.

-ist  
-less

-ing  
-ed

-able  
-er

7. break \_\_\_\_\_

10. harp \_\_\_\_\_

8. move \_\_\_\_\_

11. age \_\_\_\_\_

9. plan \_\_\_\_\_

12. teach \_\_\_\_\_



**Prefixes/Suffixes — Posttest**

Read each sentence. Underline the words that have a prefix. Circle the words that have a suffix.

1. Liana is setting the timer to come on at 4:00.
2. I need to rewrite my history paper.
3. We have a meeting with a nonprofit group.
4. It's impossible to dislike Tasha because she's such an optimist!

Add a prefix or suffix from the box to each word. Write the new word on the line. Use each prefix or suffix only once.

im-	re-	-able	-ed
non-	un-	-ist	-ing
dis-	in-	-less	

5. phone \_\_\_\_\_
6. visible \_\_\_\_\_
7. pharmacy \_\_\_\_\_
8. polite \_\_\_\_\_
9. hurt \_\_\_\_\_
10. care \_\_\_\_\_
11. view \_\_\_\_\_
12. stick \_\_\_\_\_
13. make \_\_\_\_\_
14. approve \_\_\_\_\_
15. wash \_\_\_\_\_



# Answer Key

## Nouns

### page 7

1. Karin, phone
2. symphony, The Mark
3. Ryan, dog
4. Nakisha, sarong
5. Seth, grandma, baskets

### page 8

crayon  
teacher  
building  
lunch  
home  
milk  
bench

### page 9

1. thing
2. place
3. thing
4. person
5. thing
6. thing
7. place
8. person
9. place
10. place
11. person
12. thing
13. place
14. person
15. thing
16. person
17. thing
18. place
19. thing
20. thing
21. place
22. thing
23. thing
24. place
25. thing
26. thing
27. thing
28. thing
29. person
30. thing

### page 10

#### People

clerk  
king  
clown  
farmer  
nurse  
driver  
pilot  
doctor

#### Places

town  
garden

school  
airport  
desert  
studio  
grocery  
park

#### Things

cup  
chair  
banana  
statue  
purse  
crab  
cloud  
kite

### page 11

1. sister-P, apple-T, table-T
2. boys-P, baseball-T, park-PL
3. Marita-P, Steffi-P, party-T, school-PL
4. ruler-T, table-T, globe-T
5. Nadia-P, store-PL, milk-T, eggs-T, breakfast-T
6. ball-T, car-T, street-PL
7. man-P, flower-T, jacket-T
8. Ian-P, lions-T, elephants-T, tigers-T, circus-PL, Saturday-T
9. you-P, book-T, desk-T, library-PL
10. teacher-P, stories-T, us-P, day-T, lunch-T

### page 12

1. pioneers, wagons
2. animals, land
3. articles, birds
4. astronaut, class
5. students, submarines
6. kitten, table
7. group, library
8. hamsters, cage
9. repairperson, telephone
10. snake, water
11. doctor, chart
12. vegetable, squash
13. map, country
14. museum, rock

### page 13

1. clock
2. grandmother
3. boat
4. audience
5. rider
6. club
7. buffalo
8. Coach Perez
9. children
10. volcano
11. barber
12. students

### page 14

1. cat
2. toddler
3. dogs
4. plants
5. boy
6. floats
7. sister
8. aunt
9. James
10. radio
11. kitten
12. man
13. choir
14. glove
15. apple
16. test
17. bug
18. teacher
19. bluebird
20. building
21. pen
22. clock
23. food
24. color

### page 15

#### Subject

1. Rico
2. rabbit
3. Janice
4. Jason
5. musician
6. mail carrier

#### Verb

floated  
hopped  
sat  
looked  
played  
delivered

### page 16

1. peas
2. auditorium
3. security guard
4. rose
5. pecans
6. kingfish
7. hurricane
8. boots
9. whale
10. concert
11. rings
12. dinosaurs

### page 17

1. roses
2. raincoat
3. rocker
4. orange
5. artist
6. couch
7. girl
8. collie
9. roast
10. library
11. baby-sitter
12. park

### page 18

1. carpenter
2. player
3. florist
4. hair stylist
5. secretary
6. teller
7. disc jockey
8. cowboy
9. barber
10. actor
11. veterinarian
12. pilot

### page 19

Answers will vary.

### page 20

Answers will vary.

### page 21

1. James, Los Angeles
2. Mr. Stailey, Main Street
3. Mrs. Hyde, Texas, Houston, Exxon Oil Company
4. Carver School, New York, Canada
5. Mini-Mart, Dr. Manter
6. Superman, Cinderella
7. Batman, Lee College, Lake Houston
8. United States, New York Times, Denver Airport
9. Friday, September, Sherry
10. Peter Pan
11. Mrs. Salazar, Coach Andrews
12. Melissa
13. Alaska, October
14. Monday, February
15. Jupiter, Mario, Nintendo
16. Daniel

## Pronouns

### page 22

1. it
2. She
3. He
4. we
5. They
6. It

### page 23

1. She
2. They
3. They
4. we
5. He
6. we

## Answer Key

### page 24

1. It, He, She
2. They
3. She
4. It
5. We
6. He
7. He
8. She

### page 25

1. They
2. We
3. She
4. We
5. They
6. It
7. They
8. He
9. She
10. We

### page 26

1. She
2. They
3. We
4. She, He, It
5. It
6. They
7. He
8. We, It

### page 27

1. It
2. She
3. We
4. It
5. She
6. He, She, It
7. She
8. They
9. He
10. She
11. He
12. She
13. It
14. It
15. I
16. They, we
17. We
18. They, we
19. She, she
20. I, it

### page 28

1. I
2. I
3. me
4. I
5. I
6. me
7. I
8. me
9. I
10. me

### page 29

1. I
2. me
3. I
4. me
5. me
6. I
7. I
8. me
9. I
10. I
11. me
12. me
13. I
14. me

### page 30

1. her
2. them, him/her
3. him
4. her, her
5. him
6. her
7. us
8. her, them
9. him, it
10. us, them

### page 31

1. them
2. her, him
3. them
4. him/her
5. it, her/him
6. it, him
7. it, them
8. us, it
9. them, her
10. us, them

### page 32

1. him
2. it, her
3. us
4. them
5. us
6. me, them
7. us
8. her
9. it
10. me
11. her
12. them, it
13. them
14. it, it, him

### page 33

1. his book
2. its wing
3. her pie
4. his game
5. my book
6. their car
7. their dog
8. her ring
9. my homework

10. its smell
11. their points
12. their meeting

### page 34

1. my book
2. her dress
3. their game
4. its grass
5. your cake
6. his prize
7. her limousine
8. their house
9. his horse
10. their program
11. her book
12. his crown

### page 35

1. his, her, its paw
2. his book
3. her letter
4. our paper
5. its team
6. its crew
7. his son
8. their hats
9. its, his, her roar
10. her cookies
11. its tires
12. his cane
13. her castle
14. his tray
15. his shoes
16. her, his pens
17. her basket
18. their dance
19. his friend
20. her game

### page 36

1. his
2. its
3. their
4. our
5. his
6. its
7. his
8. their
9. its, her
10. his
11. her
12. its
13. his
14. its
15. his
16. its, her, his
17. her
18. our
19. their
20. its

### page 37

1. Answers will vary.
2. Answers will vary.
3. her, its

4. Answers will vary.
5. its
6. its
7. his
8. Answers will vary.
9. her
10. their
11. Answers will vary.
12. its, her, his
13. our, their
14. Answers will vary.

### page 38

1. I
2. We
3. She
4. me
5. I, him
6. us
7. They
8. He

### page 39

1. us
2. her
3. We
4. him
5. him, her
6. He, her
7. She, he
8. We, him
9. He, her
10. her, his
11. him, her, we
12. We, we, him

### page 40

1. It, we
2. they
3. He, us
4. You, me, I, you
5. We
6. She, my
7. You, they
8. I, you, us
9. I, him, I
10. It, I, it
11. I, them, you
12. He, you, you, it
13. they, them
14. I, they

### page 41

1. They, themselves
2. We, they
3. himself, my
4. They, he, it
5. I, we, them
6. They, us
7. it, they
8. We, him, their
9. I, him, you, me
10. we, them, you
11. It, her, us
12. your, us

# Answer Key

## page 42

1. I, it
2. I, my, her
3. you, me, it
4. It, its
5. She, them, our
6. We, our
7. Their, its
8. their, me
9. his, their
10. I, your
11. We, their
12. me, you, your
13. You, my
14. They, me
15. I, them, their
16. I, them
17. Your, me
18. you, this, me
19. you, your
20. She, us, our
21. Your, my
22. You, I
23. His, it
24. Her, them

## Verbs

## page 43

1. jumped
2. climbs
3. screamed
4. will have
5. is going
6. will give

## page 44

1. shine
2. bark
3. help
4. wiggle
5. write
6. turn
7. speak
8. hop
9. nail
10. crack
11. falls
12. roll
13. learn
14. paint

## page 45

Answers will vary.

## page 46

played, listen, jumps, turned, reads, laughs, bring, add, write

## page 47

Answers will vary.

## page 48

Answers will vary.

## page 49

1. smelled
2. delivered
3. climbed
4. laughed
5. cleaned
6. washes
7. drives
8. drew
9. wrote
10. played
11. mailed
12. scratched
13. lay, slept
14. cried, broke

## page 50

Answers will vary.

## page 51

1. sleep
2. climb
3. eat
4. swallow
5. push
6. cut
7. push, dial
8. clean
9. turn
10. write
11. go, drive, fly
12. shoot

## page 52

Answers will vary.

## page 53

1. G
2. H
3. D
4. I
5. A
6. B
7. E
8. L
9. C
10. K
11. F
12. J

## page 54

1. assisted
2. screamed, cheered
3. raced, sped
4. delivered
5. sketched, painted
6. glimpsed, observed
7. raced, sped
8. placed, piled

9. delivered, recited
10. stop, remain

## page 55

1. dashed
2. gawked
3. composed
4. cherished
5. utilized
6. united
7. troubled
8. explain
9. Visualize
10. analyzed

## page 56

1. acknowledged
2. prompted
3. commended
4. observed
5. combined
6. modified
7. restored
8. employed

## page 57

1. future
2. present
3. future
4. future
5. future
6. present
7. past
8. present
9. future
10. past
11. past
12. past
13. past
14. past
15. past
16. future
17. present
18. future
19. present
20. past
21. present
22. future
23. present
24. present

## page 58

cleaned, clean, will clean  
picked, pick, will pick  
pushed, push, will push  
thought, think, will think  
waited, wait, will wait  
kicked, kick, will kick  
wore, wear, will wear  
passed, pass, will pass  
came, come, will come

## page 59

listen, listened, will listen  
go, went, will go  
drop, dropped, will drop  
play, played, will play  
repeat, repeated, will repeat  
paint, painted, will paint

## page 60

1. present
2. past
3. present
4. future
5. past
6. future
7. present
8. past
9. present
10. past

## page 61

1. past
2. future
3. present
4. present
5. past
6. future
7. present
8. present
9. past
10. past
11. future
12. past
13. past
14. future

## page 62

1. past
2. present
3. present
4. past
5. past
6. present
7. past
8. past
9. present
10. future
11. present
12. past
13. present
14. future

## page 63

hit, like, come, sing, run, eat,  
smile, lose, load, fit, find,  
play, roll, write, lean, crawl,  
joke

## Answer Key

### page 64

fly, know, find, sing, wish,  
rest, take, jump, play, bring,  
meet, dress, swim, think, fall

BBEGINTHINKFHLU  
HDHKGKPMGROWJCL  
NWZFADNJOCHRUAE  
FLYADRESSUHNMT  
ISAJCAVYINGZPEI  
NEESAUGFUSHIOMN  
DEEXSAWHNMTEKNB  
GOOJIEEOCIHBMIR  
FWATNHFLHMIOBBI  
ASCGGRIDGHNJIKN  
LRSEDZAAVGPIJMG  
UTGFEEILNTLDADA  
GHTWISHMAAMEET  
KNOWXWEAAKYIGHY  
USOOKMBCSESEWDR  
BADGHTOLHGFREST

### page 65

1. plays
2. work
3. like
4. washes
5. travels
6. hunts
7. chases
8. colors
9. paints
10. follows
11. changes
12. pushes

### page 66

1. work
2. jump
3. play
4. look
5. count
6. color
7. walk
8. laugh
9. stack
10. watch
11. listened
12. played
13. visited
14. picked
15. cleaned

### page 67

1. looking
2. liking
3. shining
4. fanning
5. watching
6. singing
7. spinning
8. yelling
9. timing
10. running
11. cooking
12. designing
13. baking
14. sitting

15. skipping
16. shouting

### page 68

1. covering
2. zipping
3. napping
4. hopping
5. staring
6. creaking
7. rolling
8. wrapping
9. laughing
10. placing
11. telling
12. signing
13. hugging
14. smiling
15. twirling
16. skipping
17. moaning
18. loaning
19. batting
20. owning
21. giggling
22. putting
23. sliding
24. topping
25. sledding
26. jogging

### page 69

1. married
2. planned
3. danced
4. worried
5. tanned
6. emptied
7. fried
8. hurried
9. frayed
10. flipped
11. carried
12. dared
13. studied
14. named
15. omitted
16. closed

### page 70

- cried  
hopped  
skipped  
pulled  
jumped  
carried  
pressed  
married  
fried  
dried  
baked  
popped  
passed  
dipped  
studied  
faded

- liked  
tapped  
raked  
pried

BMMARRIEDOPUWAS  
LHOPPEDIRCRWATK  
JAUUKELITIOIVNAI  
UANLOIPPEDPOPP  
MNOLXAUFDCDREPP  
PEOECAEYBAKEDEE  
ESSDOHGGEEERSODD  
DPCARRIEDOUSTER  
TOEVEADEDOOEAKE  
FPOREZADRLEDORU  
RPAKESTUDIEDAAR  
IEROPESTAKAUTKE  
EDRCRIEDOEJWUEO  
DPYETSEDROORDT  
UPASSEDRAESTONE

### page 71

1. Karen sneezed quietly.
2. Lisa watched the baby crawl on the floor.
3. Brendan waxed the car very carefully.
4. Caitlin tried to be the best tennis player in school.
5. Mason washed his hands before lunch.
6. Sarah called her mom every day after school.
7. Wanda opened the boxes for her teacher.
8. Cory smiled all the time.

### page 72

1. You will help me.
2. Dan will play today.
3. The kitten will drink some water.
4. Snow will fall this winter.
5. The bird will sit on the branch.
6. Tracy will play the piano.
7. The storm will move away.
8. Penny will sleep.
9. Our team will win.
10. We will hurry to finish.
11. The store will close early.
12. We will stop at noon.

### page 73

- 1, 3, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14,  
17, 19

### page 74

1. Marcus will jump.
2. I will try.
3. I will go.
4. The choir will sing.
5. It will sound good.

6. Garth will read the magazine.
7. We will hear the noise.
8. You will write a story.
9. The track team will run.
10. Linda will shop.
11. Amy will bake.
12. You will make cookies.
13. Lance will vote.
14. They will play games.
15. I will laugh.
16. Ethan will work alone.
17. Mr. Goldstein will listen to the weather report on the radio every day.
18. Lee Wyn will play the violin in the school orchestra.

### page 75

1. I will work very hard on my science project.
2. Sean will write an article about recycling for the school newspaper.
3. Mr. Trahan will climb mountains in Colorado in the summer.
4. Marta and Ben will write a play about the life of Abraham Lincoln.
5. She will turn off the light and close the door.
6. The soldiers will march in the big parade.
7. I will finish my homework after dinner.
8. Terence will play basketball with great skill.

### page 76

1. wrote
2. took
3. flew
4. knew
5. sat
6. stuck
7. fell
8. saw
9. sang
10. bent
11. dug
12. threw
13. ran
14. thought
15. left
16. wore
17. broke
18. came
19. gave
20. rang

## Answer Key

### page 77

1. taught
2. stood
3. bit
4. drank
5. misled
6. took
7. rode
8. knew
9. came
10. wrote
11. drove
12. blew
13. forgot
14. lost
15. tore
16. paid
17. told
18. spoke
19. flew
20. gave
21. rang
22. held

### page 78

1. rode
2. sang
3. heard
4. wrote
5. drew
6. fell
7. swam
8. bought
9. drank
10. flew
11. bound
12. built
13. would
14. did
15. sank
16. found
17. gave
18. ate
19. came
20. began
21. saw
22. sold

### page 79

1. stole
2. speak
3. threw
4. bit
5. made
6. hid
7. froze
8. hear
9. bought
10. told
11. break
12. caught
13. rang
14. did
15. eat
16. found

17. build
18. sat

### page 80

1. built
2. stung
3. understood
4. drank
5. rode
6. left
7. thought
8. spoke
9. held
10. found
11. threw
12. wrote

### page 81

1. took
2. drove
3. knew
4. sang
5. sold
6. struck
7. caught
8. became
9. taught
10. brought
11. heard
12. tore

### page 82

1. are
2. is
3. am
4. are
5. is
6. is
7. are
8. are
9. are
10. am

### page 83

1. were
2. was
3. was
4. was
5. was
6. were
7. were
8. were
9. were
10. was
11. was
12. was

### page 84

1. does, did
2. did, does
3. did
4. does
5. do
6. did
7. did

8. does, did
9. does
10. did

### page 85

1. have, had
2. have
3. had
4. have, had
5. had
6. had
7. have
8. had
9. have
10. have

### page 86

#### Across

1. became
6. thought
8. ate
9. was
10. had
11. went
12. took
13. sang
15. wore
17. ran
18. drank
19. slept

#### Down

2. caught
3. made
4. left
5. sank
7. threw
11. won
13. saw
14. grew
16. rang
18. drew

### page 87

1. is playing
2. are having
3. Did go
4. have finished
5. will arrive
6. will help
7. would like
8. has seen
9. will be hanging
10. has written

### page 88

1. had
2. is, was
3. am
4. was
5. are, were
6. have
7. has
8. are, were
9. have, had
10. are, were

11. is, was
12. has, had

### page 89

1. are playing
2. are migrating
3. is ringing
4. is moving
5. am going
6. is practicing
7. are writing
8. is falling
9. is having
10. am stacking

### page 90

1. is
2. are
3. are
4. is
5. is
6. are
7. is
8. is
9. is
10. is
11. are
12. is
13. is
14. are
15. is
16. are
17. is
18. are
19. are
20. are

Sentences will vary.

### page 91

1. Are
2. Is
3. Are
4. Are
5. Are
6. Is
7. Are
8. Are
9. Are
10. Are
11. Are
12. Is
13. Are
14. Is
15. Are

### page 92

1. is
2. is
3. are
4. is
5. is
6. are
7. is
8. is
9. are
10. is

## Answer Key

11. are
12. are

### page 93

1. is
2. are
3. are
4. is
5. is
6. Are
7. is
8. are
9. are
10. are
11. are
12. is

### page 94

1. were
2. was
3. was
4. was
5. was
6. were
7. was
8. were
9. was
10. were
11. was
12. was

### page 95

1. was
2. were
3. were
4. were
5. were
6. was
7. were
8. were
9. was
10. was
11. were
12. was

### page 96

1. Was
2. Were
3. Were
4. Were
5. Was
6. Were
7. Was
8. Was
9. Were
10. Were
11. Was
12. Were
13. Were
14. Was

### page 97

1. were
2. were
3. was

4. was
5. were
6. were
7. were
8. was
9. was
10. was
11. were
12. was

### page 98

1. have
2. has
3. have
4. has
5. have
6. have
7. have
8. has
9. have
10. has
11. have
12. have

### page 99

1. have
2. has
3. have
4. have
5. has
6. have
7. have
8. has
9. have
10. has
11. has
12. has
13. have
14. has

### page 100

1. do, did
2. does, did
3. Do, Did
4. Do, Did
5. do, did
6. does
7. did
8. does
9. will do
10. Do, Did

### page 101

1. will
2. would
3. will
4. will
5. would
6. will
7. will
8. will
9. would
10. Will

### page 102

- 2, 4, 5

### page 103

1. helps
2. work
3. grow
4. like
5. plays
6. practices
7. grow
8. begin
9. fly
10. weaves
11. lifts
12. fall

### page 104

1. flies
2. bakes
3. rushes
4. scratches
5. pushes
6. sells
7. watches
8. buzzes
9. guesses
10. marches
11. listens
12. cries

### page 105

1. run
2. works
3. travels
4. plays
5. waits
6. tries
7. enjoy
8. tells
9. writes
10. sits
11. like
12. leaves

### page 106

1. went
2. ran
3. came
4. flew
5. wrote
6. sat
7. likes
8. make
9. drives, drove
10. will like
11. will travel
12. sold

### page 107

1. spins, spun
2. drove
3. carries, carried
4. writes, wrote
5. met

6. wears, wore
7. are
8. were
9. says, said
10. are
11. have, had
12. plays, played

---

## Phrases and Sentences

---

### page 108

1. pepper
2. knife
3. socks
4. brush
5. water
6. crackers
7. vegetables
8. queen
9. jelly
10. paper
11. subtraction
12. dogs

### page 109

1. tea
2. books
3. money
4. flowers
5. nut
6. grapes
7. swings
8. eggs

### page 110

1. nail
2. go
3. pepper
4. thread
5. crackers
6. right
7. eggs
8. fork, spoon
9. out
10. down
11. left, wrong
12. night
13. right
14. entrance
15. off
16. minus
17. false
18. bottom

### page 111

1. buildings
2. fish, water
3. tree
4. hammer, nail
5. scissors
6. clothes
7. book, magazine
8. blankets, pillowcases



## Answer Key

9. eggs, milk
10. water, food
11. chocolate, coffee, tea
12. lightning
13. milk, water, soda pop
14. envelope
15. flowers, vegetables
16. team, bench, mound
17. coins, money, pennies
18. pictures

### page 112

1. buzz
2. laughter
3. ringing
4. siren
5. bark
6. tick
7. knock
8. quack
9. tap-tap
10. honk
11. hum
12. flapping
13. squeal
14. purr
15. swish
16. splash
17. drip
18. clippity-clop

### page 113

1. G
2. E
3. H
4. F
5. C
6. I
7. A
8. B
9. J
10. D

### page 114

1. C
2. E
3. D
4. J
5. A
6. G
7. I
8. B
9. H
10. F

### page 115

1. H
2. B, D
3. G
4. E
5. D, B
6. A
7. I
8. C
9. F
10. J

### page 116

1. rode the horse
2. prepared the food
3. read us a story
4. broke off
5. repaired our car
6. drove the semi
7. hammered loudly
8. buried the acorns
9. stopped for passengers
10. took our picture
11. led us through the museum
12. gave a speech on TV

### page 117

#### Who

- A house painter
- The florist
- The delivery person
- The store clerk
- The doctor

#### Action

- painted
- put
- stopped
- sold
- checked

#### What

- the house blue
- the flowers in a vase
- at the corner
- a coat to the man
- my throat

### page 118

#### Who

- The pilot
- Jeremy
- The hairdresser
- The carpenter
- Aunt Pilar

#### Action

- flew
- rode
- cut
- hammered
- baked

#### What

- a plane
- the horse
- my hair
- the nail
- a roast

#### Where

- to New York
- through the field
- in her shop
- on the roof
- in the kitchen

### page 119

1. went, drove
2. hammered
3. gave, brought
4. took

5. painted, sketched
6. waited
7. won, entered
8. fed, gave, brought
9. answered
10. visit
11. read
12. watched, checked

### page 120

Answers may vary.

### page 121

Answers may vary.

### page 122

1. oven
2. shampoo, water
3. soap
4. radio, CD player, TV
5. key
6. spoon
7. pages
8. ingredients
9. film
10. umbrella
11. hammer
12. stamp

### page 123

1. brush
2. push, need, use
3. take
4. set
5. word
6. use
7. hit
8. dirt, water, seeds
9. wash
10. driver's license, key
11. close, shut
12. dance

### page 124

1. I like you.
2. Lucas fell down.
3. Go play outside.
4. Clean your room.
5. The dog barked.
6. Did you call?
7. That is funny.
8. Can you play?
9. I see my friend.
10. Gina climbed the tree.
11. Jacob read his book.
12. Toya rode a boat.

### page 125

1. The mail carrier delivered a letter.
2. The nurse carried the baby.
3. Andre got a haircut.
4. Who can help me?
5. My stepmom went shopping.

6. School was cancelled today.
7. My grandmother baked a pie.
8. Dylan likes to listen to music.

### page 126

1. Put the pizza on the table.
2. The kittens played with the yarn.
3. Gabe can ride with us.
4. Don't forget to wash your hands.
5. Will you help me work this puzzle?
6. My friends are scared of my pet snake.
7. Meiko spent the afternoon at the arcade.
8. Wayne cleaned the kitchen for his mother.

### page 127

1. Marlon rode his bike down the trail.
2. Do you know where Sherrie lives?
3. We looked out the window and saw falling snow.
4. Irene worked hard on her school project.
5. Jordan read a book about a famous explorer.
6. Charlie had a scary dream last night.
7. Doug tried to train his dog.
8. We played soccer in gym class today.

### page 128

1. Grandma baked bread last night.
2. Brian counted fifteen people in the room.
3. The baby crawled to get his toy.
4. Tomas listened to the radio after supper.
5. We went on a picnic at the park.
6. The rabbit nibbled on the carrot.
7. Valerie moved the books off the table.
8. The cat slept on the chair all day.

### page 129

1. Lisa wrote her friend a letter.

## Answer Key

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. My dog ran down the street.<br>3. Devin likes to jump rope.<br>4. Can Mia come to visit me?<br>5. Trey feels very happy today.<br>6. Renee made the winning basket.<br>7. Will you help me with my homework?<br>8. Raymond called 911 when he saw the fire. | door<br>dress<br>door<br>school<br>clock<br><b>Blue</b><br>dishes<br>halls<br>rulers<br>pencils<br>bushes<br>spoons<br>holes |
|--|--|

### page 134

#### page 130

1. Did you see Erik run?
2. Why aren't you going with me?
3. Are you having fun at the party?
4. When is your aunt coming?
5. Where did you put your coat?
6. Do you know my friend?
7. Did you like the story?
8. Have you seen my brown coat?

#### page 131

1. What street does Kathy live on?
2. Is Sam's apartment near school?
3. When are you going to go to bed?
4. Who will be in the play?
5. Will you play ball with us?
6. What movie are you going to?
7. Can we please have some yogurt?
8. Did Jeff drop the glass on the floor?

#### Plurals

#### page 132

1. mittens
2. crutches
3. leaves
4. days
5. coats
6. boxes
7. berries
8. buzzes

#### page 133

**Yellow**  
 pen  
 leg

1. P
2. S
3. P
4. P
5. P
6. S
7. S
8. P
9. P
10. S
11. P
12. S
13. P
14. P
15. S
16. P
17. S
18. S
19. S
20. S
21. P
22. S
23. S
24. P
25. S
26. S
27. P
28. S
29. S
30. P
31. S
32. S
33. S
34. P
35. S
36. P
37. P
38. S
39. S
40. P
41. S
42. S
43. P
44. S
45. P

### page 135

**Singular**  
 home  
 truck  
 frog

- arm  
 spoon  
 couch  
 fence  
 coat  
 monkey  
 clip  
 cage  
 yard

#### Plural

- papers  
 plates  
 dishes  
 shoes  
 sticks  
 maps  
 ribs  
 tapes  
 bridges  
 ships  
 oars  
 boats

#### page 136

1. boys
2. stories
3. skies
4. keys
5. countries
6. valleys
7. pansies
8. trays
9. parties
10. cities
11. mysteries
12. toys
13. copies
14. babies
15. agencies
16. monkeys
17. puppies
18. berries
19. studies
20. flies
21. ways
22. pennies

#### page 137

1. berries
2. peaches
3. ponies
4. skies
5. ranches
6. riches
7. boxes
8. dairies
9. fries
10. prizes
11. alleys
12. fairies
13. flashes
14. places
15. trials
16. patches
17. couches
18. bosses

19. dishes
20. brushes
21. ferries
22. dresses
23. matches
24. lunches
25. foxes
26. rashes
27. mixes
28. tourists
29. lashes
30. latches

#### page 138

1. boxes
2. tables
3. mixes
4. couches
5. dresses
6. foxes
7. wishes
8. pinches
9. balloons
10. pencils
11. lessons
12. matches

#### page 139

1. packs
2. dishes
3. messes
4. diamonds
5. ditches
6. taxes
7. sharks
8. stitches
9. leashes
10. mailboxes
11. addresses
12. foxes
13. ranches
14. mazes
15. inches
16. screens
17. buses
18. ducks
19. dresses
20. rinses
21. booklets
22. tablecloths

#### page 140

1. buggies
2. passes
3. lunches
4. trays
5. losses
6. patches
7. days
8. keys
9. watches
10. flies
11. matches
12. plays

# Answer Key

## page 141

1. bushes
2. catches
3. taxes
4. ranches
5. berries
6. ditches
7. wishes
8. axes
9. benches
10. ferries
11. foxes
12. dishes

## page 142

1. crutches
2. mixes
3. calendars
4. babies
5. foxes
6. scratches
7. daisies
8. hats

Sentences will vary.

## page 143

1. mice
2. teeth
3. women
4. geese
5. children
6. men
7. sheep
8. deer
9. feet
10. jellyfish

## page 144

1. hooves
2. shelves
3. men
4. children
5. teeth
6. oxen
7. leaves
8. calves
9. fish
10. feet
11. mice
12. lives
13. elves
14. geese

## page 145

### Across

2. loaves
3. men
7. elves
9. women
11. scarves
13. geese
14. moose
15. feet
16. children

### Down

1. deer

2. leaves
4. lives
5. oxen
6. wives
8. scissors
10. mice
12. teeth

## page 146

### Across

4. traps
6. eyelashes
10. elves
11. studies
12. cafeterias
16. taxes
19. skies
20. libraries
21. men
22. shoes

### Down

1. boxes
2. geese
3. lashes
5. pennies
7. hooves
8. seas
9. cavities
13. foxes
14. leaves
15. flies
16. teeth
17. tries
18. fries

## Adjectives

## page 147

Answers will vary.

## page 148

fried  
green  
colorful  
plastic  
small  
fat  
tasty

## page 149

1. funny
2. tasty
3. round
4. flat
5. light
6. tall
7. brave
8. big
9. huge
10. pretty
11. scaly
12. glass
13. tasty
14. soft

## page 150

1. tasty, red
2. small, fast
3. heavy, hard
4. sturdy, low
5. young, small
6. rock, soft
7. comfortable, large
8. dense, cool
9. busy, noisy
10. electric, hot

## page 151

1. furry, black
2. scaly, green
3. green, growing
4. cheerful, long
5. large, carpeted
6. sharp, pointed
7. orange, crunchy
8. square, cardboard
9. ringing, broken
10. tasty, sweet
11. bright, shining
12. smooth, reflective

## page 152

1. deserted, huge, green
2. barking, frightened
3. two, wooden, late
4. ripe
5. new, several
6. chocolate
7. quick, pencil, laughing
8. frightened, loud
9. fearless, swift
10. stormy, dry
11. interesting
12. healthy, crunchy

## page 153

Answers will vary.

## page 154

Answers will vary.

## page 155

1. messy
2. playful
3. ticking
4. arid
5. brief
6. hanging
7. coiled
8. swift
9. wrinkled
10. wet
11. winning
12. dance

## page 156

1. crispy
2. sly
3. crying
4. graceful

5. interesting
6. smoking
7. messy
8. frayed
9. wooden
10. rumbling
11. soggy
12. steaming

## page 157

1. stormy
2. loud
3. beautiful
4. creaking
5. bright
6. sleeping
7. growling
8. spooky
9. funny
10. purring
11. sour
12. rusty
13. graceful
14. talented
15. slithering
16. careful
17. blazing
18. sneaky

## page 158

The Crispy Cracker  
The Sweltering Heat  
The Nosy Detective  
The Ringing Bells  
The Dripping Water  
The Locked Safe  
The Swift River  
The Roaring Lion

## page 159

dark, cold night  
funny, red-nosed clown  
slow, green turtle  
big, brown dog  
large, blue truck  
brown, old building

## page 160

the slow turtle  
the cold rain  
the ticking clock  
the round ball  
the playful kitten  
the brief intermission  
the coiled snake  
the watchful lifeguard

## page 161

1. funny
2. broken
3. speeding
4. bright
5. difficult
6. tiny
7. long
8. substitute

## Answer Key

9. terrible
10. coffee
11. pink
12. tasty
13. stormy
14. covered
15. orange
16. birthday
17. sore
18. blazing
19. steam
20. sour

### page 162

Answers will vary.

### page 163

1. lonely
2. happy
3. confused
4. rushed
5. puzzled
6. bored
7. cautious
8. rested
9. excited
10. anxious
11. angry
12. elated

### page 164

Answers will vary.

### page 165

Answers will vary.

### page 166

Answers will vary.

### page 167

Answers will vary.

### page 168

Answers will vary.

### page 169

brighter, brightest  
luckier, luckiest  
faster, fastest  
younger, youngest  
lighter, lightest  
meaner, meanest  
calmer, calmest  
richer, richest  
quieter, quietest  
heavier, heaviest  
softer, softest

### page 170

1. roughest
2. lightest
3. taller
4. longest
5. shorter
6. wider

7. laziest
8. calmer
9. younger
10. heavier

### page 171

1. strangest
2. noisier
3. sweetest
4. happier
5. harder
6. highest
7. brightest
8. messiest
9. fastest
10. longer

### page 172

1. longer
2. shorter
3. largest
4. prettiest
5. closer
6. tallest
7. tighter
8. sweetest
9. happiest
10. cleanest
11. nicest
12. higher

### page 173

1. tallest
2. longer
3. colder
4. biggest
5. slowest
6. fuller
7. shorter
8. calmer
9. faster
10. longest
11. strongest
12. shortest

### page 174

1. funniest
2. harder
3. largest
4. higher
5. cheaper
6. tallest
7. heavier
8. nicest
9. prettiest
10. dirtier
11. cutest
12. tastiest

### page 175

1. fastest
2. longest
3. shortest
4. bigger
5. newest

6. smallest
7. warmest
8. nicest
9. oldest
10. shortest
11. brighter
12. harder

### page 176

Answers will vary.

### page 177

Answers will vary.

---

### Possessives

---

### page 178

1. girl's
2. cat's
3. cars' tires
4. dogs' bones
5. men's
6. children's

### page 179

1. boy's
2. computer's
3. door's
4. teacher's
5. ship's
6. paper's
7. paint's
8. shirt's
9. landmark's
10. contest's
11. pet's
12. town's
13. Roberto's
14. flower's
15. library's
16. dresser's
17. movie's
18. zebra's
19. state's
20. kite's
21. sign's
22. ocean's

### page 180

1. the girl's coat
2. the cook's food
3. the man's snoring
4. the father's clothing
5. the salesperson's computer
6. the author's writing
7. the teacher's calendar
8. the barber's razor
9. the bank's offices
10. the dog's yelp
11. the playground's slide
12. the boy's pencil

### page 181

1. the man's pen
2. the baby's crib
3. the boy's cough
4. the painter's painting
5. the sun's glare
6. the musician's instrument
7. the writer's poem
8. the canary's song
9. the lion's roar
10. the dealer's book
11. the truck's wheels
12. the plant's leaves

### page 182

1. the woman's purse
2. the driver's truck
3. the baby's crying
4. the alarm's sound
5. the bird's song
6. the country's flag
7. the coat's zipper
8. the cow's milk
9. the worker's hardhat
10. the waterfall's sound
11. the saw's noise
12. the computer's keys

### page 183

1. the girl's house
  2. the library's book
  3. the school's contest
  4. the man's beard
  5. the sun's movement
  6. the truck's tires
  7. the store's shelves
  8. the crowd's yells
  9. the clock's hands
  10. the doctor's coat
  11. the foghorn's sound
  12. the food's smell
- Sentences will vary.

### page 184

1. The office's door
2. Tony's parents
3. Larry's video
4. The motorcycle's cost
5. the museum's exhibit
6. The artist's paintings
7. The smoke detector's batteries
8. the ambulance's siren

### page 185

1. clocks'
2. states'
3. spoons'
4. trains'
5. horses'
6. dishes'
7. cards'
8. notebooks'
9. courts'
10. letters'

## Answer Key

11. families'
12. students'
13. animals'
14. children's
15. men's
16. hands'
17. fields'
18. shoes'
19. people's
20. shelves'
21. rooms'
22. dresses'

### page 186

1. the children's toys
2. the houses' doors
3. the companies' ads
4. the workers' schedules
5. the teachers' rooms
6. the crickets' noises
7. the fire fighters' hoses
8. the students' notes
9. the police officers' cars
10. the girls' journals
11. the businesses' windows
12. the dancers' costumes

### page 187

1. the cars' horns
2. the soldiers' marching
3. the countries' flags
4. the flowers' smells
5. the visitors' cards
6. the workers' tools
7. the frogs' croaking
8. the astronauts' mission
9. the cars' headlights
10. the reporters' accounts
11. the children's smiles
12. the singers' meeting

### page 188

1. The fire fighters' heroic actions
2. the children's beautiful voices
3. the airplanes' flights
4. The cities' buses
5. The wolves' howls
6. the coaches' instructions
7. The cities' libraries
8. The businesses' windows, the winners' pictures

### page 189

1. The children's songs were written by their teacher.
2. The horses' hooves clopped loudly on the street.
3. The baby birds' chirping kept us awake.

4. The Native Americans' artifacts were on display in the lobby.
5. The peoples' committee met on Thursday to vote.
6. Many ball teams' scores were shown on TV during the news.
7. All police officers' numbered cars are blue and white.
8. The buses' schedules were posted in the waiting room.

### page 190

1. The boy's bike was in the shop.
2. The two girls' hands were dirty.
3. Many of the books' covers were new.
4. The cook's apron was white.
5. Several boys' parents came to school.
6. My friend's puppy is lost.
7. They checked out books from the children's library.
8. We lost six of these jars' lids.

### page 191

1. the mail carrier's truck
2. the students' homes
3. the clown's hats
4. the drivers' cars
5. the snowman's nose
6. the kitten's fur
7. the sun's rays
8. the writer's pencils

### Adverbs

### page 192

1. quietly
2. suddenly
3. away
4. quickly
5. loudly
6. soon, shortly
7. tonight
8. slowly
9. there
10. soon, shortly

### page 193

lightly, bravely, quietly, softly, slowly, carefully, widely, proudly, sadly, quickly, sweetly, safely

### page 194

1. how
2. when
3. how
4. where
5. how
6. where
7. when
8. where
9. when
10. when
11. where
12. how

### page 195

1. when
2. how
3. when
4. where
5. when
6. where
7. how
8. where
9. where
10. where
11. how
12. how
13. where
14. when
15. how
16. how
17. where
18. when
19. when
20. how
21. when
22. where
23. where
24. how

### page 196

1. how
2. how
3. when
4. how
5. where
6. how
7. when
8. when
9. when
10. how
11. when
12. how
13. how
14. when
15. where
16. how
17. when
18. how
19. how
20. how
21. how
22. when
23. when
24. where

### page 197

1. how
2. how
3. where
4. how
5. how
6. how
7. how
8. how
9. when
10. where
11. when
12. how
13. when
14. how
15. how
16. when
17. how
18. how
19. when
20. how
21. when
22. how
23. where
24. how
25. where
26. when
27. how

### page 198

1. slowly
2. quickly
3. safely
4. together
5. carefully
6. brightly
7. well
8. carelessly
9. softly
10. Slowly
11. fairly
12. loudly

### page 199

1. this afternoon
2. Tomorrow
3. Suddenly
4. soon
5. shortly
6. again
7. never
8. recently
9. Today
10. soon
11. yesterday
12. always

### page 200

1. there
2. near
3. up
4. near
5. behind
6. inside
7. there
8. ahead

## Answer Key

9. outside
10. on, above
11. nearby
12. through

### page 201

1. on the counter
2. on the park bench
3. into the house
4. over there
5. on the lily pad
6. outside
7. at the community center
8. to Grandma's
9. through the hoop
10. in the kitchen
11. on the kitchen table
12. to the library

### page 202

1. slowly
2. late
3. widely
4. gently
5. neatly
6. quickly
7. happily
8. silently
9. carefully
10. soon
11. often
12. nearly

### page 203

1. slowly
2. carefully
3. hastily
4. there
5. softly
6. often
7. silently
8. always
9. swiftly
10. seldom
11. brightly
12. gratefully

### page 204

1. quickly
2. gracefully
3. patiently, quietly
4. Tomorrow
5. noisily
6. soon
7. quietly, patiently
8. often
9. there
10. softly

### page 205

1. loudly
2. Yesterday
3. below
4. here

5. hard
6. well
7. fast
8. now
9. slowly
10. down

### page 206

1. playfully
2. Suddenly
3. quietly
4. there, here
5. soon
6. loudly
7. there, here
8. sweetly
9. very
10. tomorrow
11. quickly
12. inside

### page 207

1. harder
2. later
3. highest
4. slower
5. louder
6. closer
7. roughest
8. higher
9. farthest
10. quietest

---

### Negatives/Contractions

---

### page 208

1. wouldn't
2. never
3. not
4. isn't
5. no
6. aren't

### page 209

1. nobody
2. not
3. nowhere
4. none
5. not
6. never
7. not
8. nothing, nowhere
9. none
10. nothing
11. nothing
12. no, not

### page 210

1. not
2. nobody
3. never
4. nothing
5. nothing

6. none
7. never
8. not, never
9. not
10. none
11. nobody
12. never

### page 211

1. not
2. not
3. nothing
4. none
5. nothing
6. no
7. no
8. none
9. nobody
10. never
11. nowhere
12. not
13. no
14. nobody
15. never
16. none
17. not
18. nothing
19. not
20. nowhere

### page 212

1. isn't
2. won't
3. can't
4. couldn't
5. didn't
6. wouldn't
7. aren't
8. shouldn't
9. don't
10. can't
11. won't

### page 213

1. didn't
2. doesn't
3. hasn't
4. shouldn't
5. isn't
6. don't
7. aren't
8. wouldn't
9. haven't
10. can't
11. weren't
12. hadn't

### page 214

1. isn't
2. haven't
3. can't
4. weren't
5. wasn't
6. couldn't
7. haven't
8. shouldn't

9. aren't
10. isn't
11. wouldn't
12. isn't

### page 215

1. were not
2. are not
3. does not
5. does not
8. did not
9. are not
10. cannot
11. should not
12. did not

### page 216

1. Don't
2. can't
3. won't
4. aren't
5. couldn't
6. isn't
7. don't
8. weren't
9. won't
10. doesn't
11. aren't
12. wasn't

### page 217

1. can't
2. won't
3. don't
4. shouldn't
5. wasn't
6. aren't
7. hadn't
8. didn't
9. haven't
10. weren't
11. isn't
12. wouldn't
13. doesn't
14. hasn't
15. no
16. none
17. nowhere
18. never
19. none
20. never
21. nobody
22. no
23. none
24. never

### page 218

1. haven't
2. hasn't
3. hadn't
4. haven't
5. hasn't
6. haven't
7. Haven't
8. haven't

## Answer Key

### page 219

1. can't
2. didn't
3. haven't
4. hasn't
5. aren't
6. shouldn't
7. wouldn't
8. weren't
9. can't
10. don't
11. hasn't
12. wasn't
13. can't
14. weren't

### page 220

1. wasn't
2. isn't
3. don't
4. aren't
5. wasn't
6. isn't
7. shouldn't
8. hasn't
9. haven't
10. aren't
11. wouldn't
12. didn't
13. won't
14. can't

### page 221

1. won't
2. can't
3. didn't
4. shouldn't
5. isn't
6. doesn't
7. wouldn't
8. haven't
9. hasn't
10. don't
11. aren't
12. weren't
13. wasn't

### page 222

1. We are not planning to be at the meeting.
2. I did not watch the big game on TV last night.
3. The store is not near the new school.
4. We would not like to play.
5. Do not open the door before you turn off the alarm.
6. We cannot go with you.

### page 223

1. shouldn't
2. didn't
3. isn't
4. don't

5. hasn't
6. couldn't
7. won't
8. haven't
9. won't
10. can't
11. didn't
12. aren't

### page 224

1. can't
2. didn't
3. couldn't
4. won't
5. hasn't
6. don't
7. isn't
8. aren't
9. shouldn't
10. haven't
11. wouldn't
12. doesn't

### Prepositions

### page 225

Answers will vary.

### page 226

Answers will vary.

### page 227

above, into, from, down, for, between, inside, off, without, outside, under, over, during, with, by, before, below, about, on, through, out, in

1. D
2. C
3. E
4. F
5. A
6. B

### page 228

into, above, within, by, between, over, through, below, under, from, outside, off, in, down, around, on, behind

Prepositions will vary.

### page 229

Answers will vary.

### page 230

1. yes
2. yes
3. no
4. yes
5. yes
6. yes
7. yes

8. yes
9. yes
10. no
11. yes
12. no
13. no
14. yes
15. yes
16. yes
17. no
18. yes
19. yes
20. yes

### page 231

1. in
2. after
3. over
4. with
5. before
6. inside
7. across
8. on
9. after
10. about
11. on
12. before

### page 232

1. down
2. up
3. in
4. under
5. with
6. inside
7. from
8. over
9. around
10. through
11. by
12. on

### page 233

1. down
2. below, under
3. off
4. around
5. inside
6. out
7. under, behind
8. to
9. between, below
10. from
11. behind, between
12. with

### page 234

1. through
2. by, beside
3. inside
4. from
5. without
6. during, before
7. before, during
8. on
9. between

10. about
11. under
12. by, beside

### page 235

S J C E T H R O U G H C A F  
A E R U I M V R E L J D S R  
D O W N S A D E I U I R M O  
P O B T E D C B N Q L O S M  
A A E I K H U E S O O K O T  
T B H A C M K P I N A G U A  
E O I E D X B H D K R A W R  
Y V N E O F F X E F V H O O  
S E D E W V B E L O W R U U  
E B F G Y U K N V C S E T N  
A H G C D S E T U N D E R D  
E D F Y U B Y D F A D S P R  
B E T W E E N C V I U N F A  
O U T S I D E G S A P D E O

### Questioning

### page 236

1. Why
2. Who
3. How
4. Where
5. What
6. When
7. Did, Will
8. Will, Can
9. Can, Will

### page 237

1. Will, Can
2. Did, Can
3. Can, Will
4. Can, Will, Did
5. Can
6. Did
7. Did, Will, Can
8. Can, Did
9. Will
10. Can
11. Will, Can
12. Did
13. Did, Will
14. Can
15. Did

### page 238

1. Can
2. Did, Can, Will
3. Will, Can
4. Did
5. Can, Will
6. Can, Will, Did
7. Can
8. Can, Will
9. Did, Can, Will
10. Can, Did
11. Can
12. Did, Can, Will

## Answer Key

### page 239

1. where
2. what
3. where
4. who
5. where
6. when
7. who
8. where
9. what
10. when
11. who
12. what
13. where
14. who
15. where
16. when
17. where
18. who
19. when
20. where
21. who
22. what
23. who
24. when
25. what
26. what, where
27. who
28. where

### page 240

1. what
2. when
3. where
4. when
5. when
6. who
7. where
8. where
9. who
10. when
11. what
12. who
13. who
14. where
15. who
16. who
17. what
18. where
19. what
20. where
21. who
22. where
23. when
24. what

### page 241

#### Who

Mom  
the bus driver  
his teacher  
the fire fighter  
our friend

#### What

my little dog  
the bird

the chair  
my game  
the football

#### When

in a few days  
next week  
this month  
last year  
in an hour

#### Where

on the TV  
in the box  
on the radio  
on the table  
in the car

### page 242

1. Where
2. Where, When
3. Where
4. What
5. Where, When
6. Where
7. What
8. When, Where
9. What
10. When
11. Where
12. When
13. What
14. When, Where

### page 243

1. Why
2. How
3. How
4. Why
5. Why
6. How
7. Why, How
8. Why
9. How
10. How
11. Why
12. Why

### page 244

1. How
2. Why
3. Why
4. How
5. Why
6. How
7. Why
8. Why
9. How
10. How
11. Why
12. Why

### page 245

1. how
2. how
3. why
4. how
5. how

6. why
7. why
8. how
9. why
10. why, how
11. how
12. why
13. why
14. how
15. how
16. why
17. why
18. how
19. why
20. why
21. how
22. how
23. why
24. why

### page 246

1. How
2. What
3. Why
4. How
5. How
6. Why, How
7. What
8. Why, How
9. Why, How
10. What
11. What
12. Why

### page 247

1. why
2. why
3. how
4. how
5. why
6. how
7. why
8. why
9. why
10. how
11. why
12. why
13. how
14. how
15. why
16. how
17. why
18. how
19. why
20. how
21. how
22. why

### page 248

1. What did Mr. Gifford complain about?
2. Why didn't Mikhail do his homework?
3. When can we go ice skating?
4. What did Darren win?

5. What did you see in New York City?
6. When and where should I meet you?
7. What is your favorite ice cream?
8. When did the new encyclopedias come?

### page 249

1. Why did you leave?
2. How much snow did we get during the night?
3. What does your dad do?
4. Where did you go last weekend?
5. When is your birthday?
6. Where does Uncle Greg live?
7. How many families live in your apartment building?
8. What kind of book did you check out?

---

### Prefixes/Suffixes

---

### page 250

1. overdid
2. walking
3. timeless
4. indirectly
5. opened
6. scientist

### page 251

1. D
2. J
3. A
4. B
5. G
6. E
7. H
8. K
9. C
10. F
11. L
12. I

### page 252

1. F
2. I
3. A
4. J
5. G
6. B
7. H
8. C
9. D
10. E

### Prefix

un



# Answer Key

dis  
un  
**Base Word**  
clean  
agree  
pleasant

## page 253

- D
- I
- N
- F
- L
- K
- B
- E
- G
- J
- A
- M
- C
- H

## page 254

- J
- F
- L
- I
- D
- K
- A
- G
- C
- H
- B
- E

## page 255

- B
- J
- F
- D
- A
- G
- C
- H
- I
- E

## page 256

insecure  
disable  
impure  
unlace  
disobey  
unsnap  
recopy  
enroll  
reheat  
retest  
enjoy  
rehire  
refold  
immature  
unbox  
redate

INSECURE OPTREC  
YROXRNEUNRAITDR  
PEIEEUBANEEREII  
EHNPOOXTRDEISO  
NERRAXBLEAREAA  
RAIEERTHTETEPBN  
OTETSREIREFOLD  
LREESETMETETET  
LRUSRWIMHOPREL  
EENTOLUAENJOYB  
THELOPETAEURYR  
DISOBEYUNSNAP  
ERIPRETRZERRET  
EEMPUREOREOVOT  
RECOPYFOUNLACE

## page 257

- digging
- skidding
- tapping
- patting
- napping
- snapping
- planning
- jabbing
- chatting
- skipping
- quitting
- sobbing
- nodding
- spitting
- hogging
- popping
- sitting
- nipping
- slipping
- grinning
- fibbing
- hemming

## page 258

- clipping
- fitting
- batting
- flagging
- planning
- pinning
- sobbing
- tanning
- digging
- patting
- bugging
- lagging
- stopping
- hopping
- sitting
- flopping
- cutting
- spinning
- chipping
- hitting
- chopping
- putting
- spanning
- flipping

## page 259

- petting
- digging
- swimming
- grinning
- jogging
- dropping
- shopping
- nodding
- chopping
- stopping
- swatting
- hugging
- tugging
- bugging

## page 260

- tugging
- scrubbing
- humming
- shutting
- getting
- bobbing
- sitting
- pinning
- digging
- tapping
- propping
- rotting

## page 261

- skating
- saving
- wiping
- caving
- timing
- wiring
- biting
- tuning
- taming
- taking
- taping
- hoping
- posing
- closing
- joking
- phoning
- fading
- tracing
- grading
- paging
- braking
- naming

## page 262

- planning
- draping
- chasing
- shaping
- mapping
- wrapping
- saving
- getting
- waving
- slicing
- hiking

- pasting
- hopping
- skipping
- wading
- trapping
- tanning
- shaking
- grabbing
- padding
- fanning
- taking

## page 263

- clipping
- hoping
- living
- sitting
- shutting
- posing
- roping
- grinning
- caving
- saving
- shaping
- planning

## page 264

- knitted
- tipped
- hemmed
- clipped
- tapped
- batted
- lagged
- planned
- propped
- rubbed
- shopped
- chipped
- grabbed
- patted
- chatted
- fanned
- topped
- rotted
- flipped
- chopped
- bobbed
- clapped
- hugged
- jogged
- noddled
- trapped

## page 265

- spotted
- sipped
- manned
- tipped
- capped
- shopped
- flagged
- fanned
- batted
- shipped
- rubbed

## Answer Key

12. patted
13. bagged
14. chipped
15. stepped
16. stopped
17. rammed
18. flopped
19. dropped
20. tabbed
21. clipped
22. tugged
23. logged
24. tripped

### page 266

1. hoped
2. jumped
3. tuned
4. padded
5. tamed
6. blamed
7. designed
8. skimmed
9. climbed
10. tugged
11. baked
12. smiled
13. clipped
14. stamped
15. dressed
16. popped
17. chopped
18. talked
19. shouted
20. propped
21. planned
22. patted

### page 267

1. closing, closed
2. caring, cared
3. picking, picked
4. dropping, dropped
5. cracking, cracked
6. chiming, chimed
7. pressing, pressed
8. flipping, flipped
9. trapping, trapped
10. framing, framed

### page 268

1. zipped
2. sliding
3. jumped
4. writing
5. carrying
6. having
7. moved
8. talked
9. traveling
10. mixing
11. cooking
12. planning

### page 269

1. walking

2. passing
3. dressed, dresses
4. piled
5. washed, washes
6. swinging
7. reading
8. looking
9. talked
10. playing
11. going
12. wearing
13. rented, rents
14. worked

### page 270

1. going
2. waited
3. fishes, fished
4. raked
5. owns
6. ruling
7. brushes, brushed
8. sleeping
9. skated
10. ringing
11. picking
12. arranged

### page 271

1. singer
2. sailor
3. teacher
4. farmer
5. marcher
6. player
7. baker
8. actor
9. helper
10. climber
11. banker
12. programmer

### page 272

1. D
2. H
3. J
4. E
5. I
6. A
7. C
8. G
9. B
10. F

### page 273

1. breakable
2. comfortable
3. reasonable
4. painless
5. doubtless
6. lifeless
7. cleanable
8. homeless
9. matchless
10. faultless
11. traceable

12. childless
13. sleepless
14. refillable
15. moveable
16. starless
17. dependable
18. washable
19. wearable
20. expandable

---

### Pre/Posttests

---

#### Nouns

##### Pretest (page 275)

doll, home, finger, tree,  
pencil, hands

- P
1. The rider shouted for  
the horse to slow down.  
T
  2. The dancer had on a  
black suit and a top hat.  
T T
  3. In the park yesterday, a  
P T  
man played the guitar  
P  
while a woman sang.
  4. mechanic
  5. camera
  6. picture
  7. appointment
  - 8.–14. Answers will vary.

*circled words:* town, friend,  
shoes, school  
*underlined/capitalized:*  
Colorado River, Sarah,  
England, New York, Uncle  
Jake

##### Posttest (page 277)

- 1.–5. Answers will vary.
  6. The Lipowitz family  
went to the park with  
their visitors.
  7. The news reporter told  
us about the  
earthquake in Japan.
  8. Uncle Mark flew to  
Canada on a huge  
airplane.
  9. essay
  10. suggestions
  11. model
  12. homework
  - 13.–14. Answers will vary.
- circled words:* pencil, book,  
cat, gloves  
*underlined/capitalized:* Mrs.  
Taylor, Australia, Atlantic  
Ocean, Travis

#### Pronouns

##### Pretest (page 279)

*circled words:* who, our,  
these, this, we, us, they, her,  
it, I, your, them, you, me

1. our, its, we, it
2. He, it, he, her
3. She, us, our
4. They, him, him, your
5. him, he
6. us, we
7. it
8. her, she
9. us, we
10. them, they
11. We
12. They
13. My cousin and I
14. her, them

##### Posttest (page 280)

1. Their, them, themselves
2. We, ourselves, we, our
3. She, me, them, it
4. I, you, us, our
5. He, them, their, they
6. him
7. it
8. them, they
9. us, we
10. them
11. her, she
12. Tom and I
13. We
14. They, my sister and me
15. My friend and I, his
16. James and I, we

#### Verbs

##### Pretest (page 281)

*circled words:* laugh, cough,  
leave, sing, run, read, pull,  
cook, dance

1. formed
2. laughed
3. read
4. clapped
5. past
6. past
7. future
8. present
9. help
10. do
11. played
12. wrote

##### Posttest (page 282)

1. drank
2. dropped
3. slammed
4. fell
5. drives
6. are

## Answer Key

7. will
8. has
9. was
10. are
11. will go
12. sang
13. sit, sits
14. wrote
15. play, plays
16. will bat
17. drank
18. find, finds
19. lifts
20. talks
21. grows
22. begin

### Phrases/Sentences

#### **Pretest** (page 284)

1. outside
2. over
3. forth
4. pencils
5. C
6. D
7. B
8. A
- 9.–13. Answers will vary.
14. Holly studied hard for the test.
15. We didn't have any paper left.

#### **Posttest** (page 285)

1. D
2. E
3. C
4. A
5. B
- 6.–12. Answers will vary.
13. The dog ran over to Darnell., Darnell ran over to the dog.
14. They were happy it was Friday.

### Plurals

#### **Pretest** (page 286)

1. The men traveled to many cities on their trip.
2. For my birthday, I got a sweater, two games, and a book.
3. The women made a banner for the visitors to our city.
4. mice
5. days
6. flies
7. boxes
8. dresses
9. ranches
10. berries

11. teeth
12. pencils
13. matches
14. feet
15. bushes
16. passes
17. families
18. ducks

#### **Posttest** (page 287)

1. skies
  2. bosses
  3. streets
  4. feet
  5. geese
  6. halves
  7. keys
  8. butterflies
  9. glasses
  10. loaves
  11. brushes
  12. parties
- circled words:* halves, purses, copies, leaves, flies, dreams, teeth, latches, mice, children, pliers, dresses, boys

### Adjectives

#### **Pretest** (page 288)

1. tall, young, shade
2. frisky, little, yellow
3. warm, red
4. big, new, frozen, fresh
5. strangest
6. bravest
7. smaller
- 8.–12. Answers will vary.

#### **Posttest** (page 289)

- underlined words:* swift, careful, noisy, beautiful, sweet, dirty, round, pink, funny, wavering, broken, long, anxious, rough
- 1.–4. Answers will vary.
  5. lightest
  6. smartest
  7. older
  8. safest

### Possessives

#### **Pretest** (page 290)

1. the officer's coat
2. my sister's book
3. the dog's noise
4. my friend's house
5. the children's laughter
6. the organizations' meetings
7. the boys' club
8. the players' uniforms
9. pen's
10. friend's
11. students'
12. players'

#### **Posttest** (page 291)

1. the girl's home
2. the teacher's room
3. the pencil's lead
4. the book's cover
5. the people's vote
6. the women's voices
7. the boys' rooms
8. the drivers' cars
9. students'
10. brother's
11. children's
12. officers'

### Adverbs

#### **Pretest** (page 292)

- underlined words:* far, today, loudly, now, sometimes, next, always, quickly, behind, down, slowly, by
1. harder
  2. costly
  3. briskly
  4. louder
  5. slowly
  6. Sometimes
  7. outside
  8. tomorrow

#### **Posttest** (page 293)

1. nearly, yesterday
  2. when, outside
  3. hard
  4. cheerfully
- circled words:* quickly, loudly, softly, carefully
- underlined words:* then, today, early, next, soon, yesterday
- boxed words:* inside, here, far, behind, there, ahead
- 5.–8. Answers will vary.

### Negatives/Contractions

#### **Pretest** (page 294)

1. didn't
2. can't
3. not
4. not
5. Nobody
6. never
7. can't
8. haven't
9. shouldn't
10. aren't
11. isn't
12. won't
13. I can't leave on the early bus tomorrow.
14. Patricia won't wait for me after school.

#### **Posttest** (page 295)

- circled words:* never, no, nothing, nobody, won't, aren't, none, nowhere, can't, couldn't
1. never
  2. nowhere
  3. can't, isn't
  4. doesn't, none
  5. never, couldn't
  6. didn't
  7. won't
  8. haven't
  9. isn't
  10. shouldn't
  11. hadn't
  12. weren't

### Prepositions

#### **Pretest** (page 296)

- circled words:* by, about, for, to, in, under, around, without, into, over, beneath
- 1.–8. Answers will vary.
  9. in
  10. under
  11. around
  12. down

#### **Posttest** (page 297)

1. under
2. over, into
3. up, on
4. behind, at
- 5.–16. Answers will vary.

### Questions

#### **Pretest** (page 298)

- underlined words:* why, where, when, how, did, what, can, who, will
1. What
  2. Why
  3. How
  4. Who, Where
  5. Will, Can
  6. When, Where
  7. Why, How, When
  8. Can, Will, Did
  9. Where did we go on Saturday?, When did we go to the ball game?, Who went to the ball game on Saturday?
  10. How did you break your arm?, What happened when you fell out of the tree?

#### **Posttest** (page 299)

1. what
2. why

## Answer Key

3. where
4. how
5. where
6. who
7. when
8. how
9. what
10. when
- 11.–18. Answers will vary.
19. Where did Josh put the pencils?, What did Josh put in the drawer?, Who put the pencils in the drawer?
20. Why was Gia late?, What couldn't Gia find?

### Prefixes/Suffixes

#### **Pretest** (page 300)

*underlined words:*  
impossible, redo, enclose,  
unload, overdone, distaste  
*circled words:* specialist,  
loving, finishes, listened,  
careless, actor, plumber

1. overprice
2. immature
3. discourage, encourage
4. rewrite
5. unlock
6. entrust, distrust
7. breakable
8. mover, moving, moved
9. planned, planning
10. harpist
11. ageless
12. teaching, teacher

#### **Posttest** (page 301)

- 1.–4. *circled words:*  
setting, timer, meeting,  
optimist  
*underlined words:*  
rewrite, nonprofit,  
impossible, dislike
5. phoned
6. invisible
7. pharmacist
8. impolite
9. unhurt, hurting
10. careless
11. review
12. nonstick
13. making, unmake
14. disapprove
15. washable